






FITZHERBERT'S  
BOOK OF HUSBANDRY.

1534



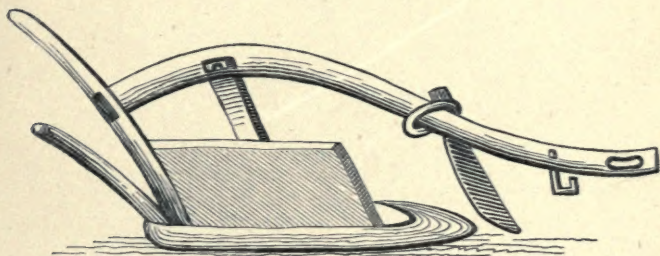
Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

THE  
BOOK OF HUSBANDRY,

BY  
MASTER FITZHERBERT.

REPRINTED FROM THE EDITION OF 1534,  
AND EDITED  
WITH AN INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND GLOSSARIAL INDEX,

BY  
THE REV. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A.,  
ELRINGTON AND BOSWORTH PROFESSOR OF ANGLO-SAXON IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE.



LONDON:  
PUBLISHED FOR THE ENGLISH DIALECT SOCIETY  
BY TRÜBNER & CO., LUDGATE HILL.  
1882.

HERTFORD:

PRINTED BY STEPHEN AUSTIN AND SONS.



## CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .....	vii
THE AUTHOR'S PROLOGUE .....	i
THE TABLE (which see) .....	3
THE BOOK OF HUSBANDRY .....	9
NOTES .....	127
GLOSSARIAL INDEX .....	149



## INTRODUCTION.

---

ONE question of chief interest respecting the volume here printed is—who was the author? We know that his name was “Mayster Fitzherbarde” (see p. 125), and the question that has to be settled is simply this—may we identify him with Sir Anthony Fitzherbert, judge of the Common Pleas, the author of the *Grand Abridgment of the Common Law*, the *New Natura Brevium*, and other legal works?

The question has been frequently discussed, and, as far as I have been able to discover, the more usual verdict of the critics is in favour of the supposed identity; and certainly all the evidence tends very strongly in that direction, as will, I think, presently appear.

Indeed, when we come to investigate the grounds on which the objections to the usually received theory rest, they appear to be exceedingly trivial; nor have I been very successful in discovering the opposers' arguments. Bohn's edition of Lowndes' *Bibliographer's Manual* merely tells us that “the treatises on Husbandry and Surveying are by some attributed to the famous lawyer Sir Anthony Fitzherbert, by others to his brother John Fitzherbert.”

In the Catalogue of the Huth Library, we find this note: “The Rev. Joseph Hunter was the first person to point out that the author of this work [Fitzherbert's *Husbandry*] and the book on Surveying was a different person from the judge of the same name.” It will be at once observed that this

note is practically worthless, from the absence of the reference. After considerable search, I have been unable to discover where Hunter's statement is to be found, so that the nature of his objections can only be guessed at.

In Walter Harte's *Essays on Husbandry* (ii. 77) we read—"How Fitzherbert could be a practitioner of the art of agriculture for 40 years, as he himself says in 1534, is pretty extraordinary. I suppose it was his country amusement in the periodical recesses between the terms." We are here presented with a definite objection, grounded, as is alleged, upon the author's own words; and it is most probable that Harte is here stating the objection which has weighed most strongly with those who (like Hunter) have objected to the current opinion. The answer to the objection is, I think, not a little remarkable, viz. that the alleged statement is *not* the author's at all. By turning to p. 125, it will be seen that it was Thomas Berthelet the printer who said that the author "had exercysed husbandry, with greate experyence, xl. years." But the author's *own* statement, on p. 124, is *differently worded*; and the difference is material. He says: "and, as touchynge the poyntes of husbandry, and of other artycles conteyned in this present boke, I wyll not saye that it is the beste waye and wyll serue beste in all places, but I saye it is the best way that euer I coude proue by experyence, the whiche haue *ben an housholder* this xl. yeres and more, and haue assaied many and dyuers wayes, and done my dyligence to proue by experyence which shuld be the beste waye." The more we weigh these words, the more we see a divergence between them and the construction which might readily be put upon the words of Berthelet; a construction which, in all probability, Berthelet did not specially intend. Any reader who hastily glances at Berthelet's statement would probably deduce from it that the author was a farmer merely, who had

had forty years' experience in farming. But this is not what we should deduce from the more careful statement of the author. We should rather notice these points.

1. The author does not speak of husbandry *only*, but of *other points*. The other points are the breeding of horses (not a necessary part of a farmer's business), the selling of wood and timber, grafting of trees, a long discourse upon prodigality, remarks upon gaming, a discussion of "what is riches," and a treatise upon practical religion, illustrated by Latin quotations from the fathers, and occupying no small portion of the work. This is not the work of a practical farmer, in the narrow acceptation of the term, meaning thereby one who farms to live; but it is clearly the work of a country gentleman, rich in horses and in timber, acquainted with the extravagant mode of life often adopted by the wealthy, and at the same time given to scholarly pursuits and to learned and devout reading. Indeed, the prominence given to religious teaching can hardly fail to surprise a reader who expects to find in the volume nothing more than hints upon practical agriculture. One chapter has a very suggestive heading, viz. "A lesson made in Englysshe verses, that *a gentylmans seruaunte* shall forget none of his gere *in his inne behynde hym*" (p. 7). This is obviously the composition of a gentleman himself, and of one accustomed to take long journeys upon horseback, and to stay at various inns on the way.<sup>1</sup>

2. Again he says, "it is the best way that euer I coude proue by experyence, the whiche . . . haue assaied *many and dyuers* wayes, and done my dyligence to proue by experyence which shuld be the beste waye." Certainly this is not the language of one who farmed for profit, but of

<sup>1</sup> "And [I give] to euery of my seruantes that be used to Ryde with me," etc. ; Sir A. Fitzherbert's Will, quoted below at p. xviii.

the *experimental* farmer, the man who could afford to lose if things went wrong, one to whom farming was an amusement and a recreation, and who delighted in trying various modes that he might benefit those who, unlike himself, could not afford to try any way but that which had long been known.

3. We must note the language in which he describes himself. He does not say that he had "exercised husbandry" for forty years, but that he had "been a householder" during that period. The two things are widely different. His knowledge of agriculture was, so to speak, accidental; his real employment had been to manage a household, or, as we should rather now say, to "keep house." This, again, naturally assigns to him the status of a country gentleman, who chose to superintend everything for himself, and to gain a practical acquaintance with everything upon his estate, viz. his lands, his cattle, his horses, his bees, his trees, his felled timber, and the rest; not forgetting his duties as a man of rank in setting a good example, discouraging waste, giving attention to prayer and almsgiving, and to his necessary studies. "He that can rede and vnderstande *latyne*, let hym take his booke in his hande, and looke stedfastely vppon the same thyng that he readeth and seeth, *that is no trouble to hym*," etc. (p. 115). Are we to suppose that it could be said generally, of farmers in the time of Henry VIII., that Latin was "no trouble to them"? If so, things must have greatly changed.

I have spoken of the above matter at some length, because I much suspect that the words used by Berthelet are the very words which have biassed, entirely in the wrong direction, the minds of such critics as have found a difficulty where little exists. It ought to be particularly borne in mind that Berthelet's expression, though likely to mislead *now*, was not calculated to do so at the time, when the authorship of the

book was doubtless well known. And we shall see presently that Berthelet himself entirely believed Sir Anthony to have been the author of this Book on Husbandry.

Another objection that has been raised is founded upon the apparent strangeness of the title "*Mayster Fitz-herbarde*," as applied to a judge. The answer is most direct and explicit, viz. that the printer who uses this title did so wittingly, for he is *the very man* who helps us to identify our author with the great lawyer. It is therefore simply impossible that he could have seen any incongruity in it, and any objection founded upon it must be wholly futile. The title of *master* was used in those days very differently to what it is now. Foxe, in his *Actes and Monuments*, ed. 1583, p. 1770, tells us how "*maister Latymer*" encouraged "*maister Ridley*," when both were at the stake; and, chancing to open Holinshed's *History* (ed. 1808, iii. 754), I find a discourse between Wolsey and Sir William Kingston, Constable of the Tower, in which the latter is called "*master Kingston*" throughout.

I cannot find that there is any reason for assigning the composition of the Book of Husbandry to John Fitzherbert, Sir Anthony's brother. It is a mere guess, founded only upon the knowledge that Sir Anthony had such a brother. It looks as though the critics who wish to deprive Sir Anthony of the honour of the authorship think they must concede somewhat, and therefore suggest his brother's name by way of compensation.

We have no proof that John Fitzherbert ever wrote anything, whilst Sir Anthony was a well-known author. All experience shows that a man who writes one book is likely to write another.

When we leave these vague surmises and come to consider the direct evidence, nearly all difficulties cease. And first, as to external evidence.

The author of the Book of Husbandry was also author of the Book of Surveying, as has always been seen and acknowledged.<sup>1</sup> The first piece of distinct evidence on the subject is the statement of Thomas Berthelet. He prefixed some verses to Pynson's edition of the Book of Surveying (1523), addressing the reader as follows :

"This worthy man / nobly hath done his payne  
I meane hym / that these sayde bokes<sup>2</sup> dyd deuyse.  
He sheweth to husbandes / in right fruteful wyse  
The manyfolde good thynges / in brefe sentence  
Whiche he hath well proued / by long experyence.  
¶ And this<sup>3</sup> I leaue hym / in his good wyll and mynde  
That he beareth / vnto the publyke weale.  
Wolde god *noblemen* / coude in their hertes fynde  
*After such forme / for the cōmons helth* to deale ;  
It is a true token / *of hyghe loue and zeale*  
Whan *he* so delyteth / and taketh pleasure  
By his busy labour / *mens welth to procure.*"

This cannot well be mistaken. It is obvious that Berthelet believed the author to be a *nobleman*, one who "shewed things to husbands" which he had gained by his own "long experience;" one who wrote out of the "good will and mind that he bare unto the public weal," thereby proving his "high love and zeal," in that he delighted "to procure men's wealth," *i.e.* the welfare of others, not his own riches, by means of his "busy labour." We hence conclude that Berthelet knew perfectly well who the author was; and indeed it would have been strange if he did not, since he was writing in 1523 (while the author was still alive), and subsequently printed both the books of which he is here speaking. He plainly tells us that the author was a nobleman, and merely wrote to benefit others out of pure love and zeal.

<sup>1</sup> "Of late by experience I contriued, compyled, and made a Treatyse, . . . and callyd it the booke of husbandrye;" Prol. to Book of Surveying.

<sup>2</sup> *I.e.* the Books on Husbandry and Surveying.

<sup>3</sup> Read *thus*.

But this is not Berthelet's only allusion to these books. In an edition of the Book of Surveying, printed by Berthelet,<sup>1</sup> there are some remarks by him at the back of the title-page to the following effect. "To the reder. Whan I had printed the boke longyng to a Justice of the peace, together with other small bokes very necessary, I bethought me vpon this boke of Surueyenge, compyled sometyme by master Fitzherbarde, how good and howe profytable it is for all states, that be lordes and possessioners of landes, . . . or tenauntes of the same, . . . also how well it agreeth with the argument of the other small bokes, as court-baron, court-hundred, and chartuary, I went in hande and printed it in the same volume that the other be, to binde them al-together. And haue amended it in many places."

The mention of "the boke longyng to a Justice of the peace" is interesting, as bringing us back again to Sir Anthony Fitzherbert. "In 1538," says Mr. Wallis,<sup>2</sup> "Robert Redman printed 'The newe Boke of Justices of the Peas, by A. F. K. [Anthony Fitzherbert, Knight], lately translated out of French into English, In the yere of our Lord God, M.D.xxxviii. The 29 day of December, Cum priuilegio.'"<sup>3</sup> Mr. Hobson's list (*Hist. Ashborne*, p. 234) mentions this as "the first work on the subject ever printed," but this is not the case. Wynkyn de Worde and Copland both printed, as early as 1515, "The Boke of Justices of the Peas, the charge, with al

<sup>1</sup> The date is 1539; the words here quoted appear also in Berthelet's edition of 1546.

<sup>2</sup> I am quoting from an article by Mr. A. Wallis entitled "Relics of Literature," which appeared in the *Derby Mercury*, Nov. 1869. It contains some useful information about the editions of Fitzherbert's works. It should be observed that 1538 was the very year of Sir Anthony Fitzherbert's death, which took place on May 27.

<sup>3</sup> In an edition printed by T. Petit in 1541, a copy of which is in the Cambridge University Library, the title is—"The Newe Booke of Justyces of Peas, made by Anthony Fitzherbard Judge, lately translated out of Frenche into Englyshe, The yere of our Lord God MDXLI."

the proces of the Cessyons, Warrants, Superseders, wyth al that longyth to ony justice, &c." It is not pretended that this was our author's work ; but he improved upon it, as he did also upon the *Natura Brevium*. In his preface to *La Novel Natura Brevium* (Berthelet, 1534), he says that the original book was written by a learned man, whom he does not name : and that it was esteemed as a fundamental book for understanding the law. In the course of its translations, and of the alteration of the laws, many things had been retained which were unnecessary, and much desirable matter was omitted. This was what induced him to compose the new one.

Upon this I have to remark, that it is incredible that Berthelet should mention a work which he knew to be by Sir Anthony Fitzherbert in one line, and in the next should proceed to speak of "Master Fitzherbarde" without a word of warning that he was speaking of a different person. The obvious inference is that the author of the *Book on Surveying* was, in his belief, the same person as the "A. F. K." who wrote "the boke longyng to a Justice of the peace." As it is, he takes no trouble about the matter ; for he could hardly foresee that any difficulty would thence arise. It is remarkable how frequently writers just stop short of being explicit, because they think that, at the moment of writing, a fact is too notorious to be worth mentioning.

Here the direct external evidence ceases. We now come to consider the internal evidence, which is interesting enough.

In the first place, the author of the *Book of Husbandry* was also the author of the *Book of Surveying*, as he tells us explicitly in his prologue to the latter book. But whoever wrote the *Book of Surveying* must have been a considerable lawyer. It is of a far more learned and technical character than the *Book on Husbandry*, and abounds with quotations

from Latin statutes, which the author translates and explains. In Chap. i he says of a certain statute, that, *in his opinion*, it was made soon after the Battle of Evesham, in the time of Henry III.; and he frequently interprets statutes with the air of one whose opinion was worth having. In Chap. xi., he enlarges upon the mistakes made by lords, knights, squires, and gentlemen who know but little of the law. "They come to the court or sende their clerkes, that can [know] as litle law as their maister or lasse, but that he vnderstandeth a lytell latyn." At the end of the same chapter, he is deep in law-terms, court-roll, fee simple, fee tayle, franke tenement, and all the rest of it. He then gives numerous forms, all in Latin, to be used by owners who wish to lease, grant, or surrender lands; but only a good lawyer would venture to recommend forms suitable for such important purposes.

Some other points of internal evidence have already been incidentally noticed, such as the author's familiarity with the mode of life of the rich; his lesson made for "a gentylmans seruaunte"; his readiness to try many ways of farming as an experimentalist who could afford to lose money; and his statement that Latin was no trouble to him. I proceed to notice a few more.

Something further can be inferred from the author's mention of places. He speaks of so many counties, as Cornwall, Devon, Essex, Kent, Somerset, Buckinghamshire, Yorkshire, and Lancashire, that we can at first obtain no definite result. But there is an express allusion to "the peeke countreye" at p. 44; whilst at p. 81 he alludes to the parts about London by using the adverb "there," as if it were *not* his home. Yet that he was perfectly familiar with London is obvious from his allusions to it in chap. xix. of the Book on Surveying. But there are two more explicit references which are worth notice. At p. 27, he speaks of "the *farther syde* of Darbyshyre, called

Scarsdale, Halomshyre, and so *northwarde* towarde Yorke and Ryppon." Now Scarsdale is one of the six "hundreds" of Derbyshire, and includes the country about Dronfield and Chesterfield; whilst Hallamshire is a name given to a part of Yorkshire lying round and including Sheffield. We hence fairly deduce the inference that the author lived on the *western side of Derbyshire*, in the neighbourhood of Ashborne, so that he looked upon Chesterfield as lying on the *farther* side of the country, and at the same time *northward*, which is precisely the fact. We are thus led to locate the author in the very neighbourhood of Sir Anthony Fitzherbert's home.

Again, at p. 65, he says that if he were to say too much about the faults of horses, he would break the promise that he made "at Grombalde brydge," the first time that he went to Ripon to buy colts. After some search as to the place here intended, I found, in Allen's History of Yorkshire, that one of the bridges over the Nidd near Knaresborough is called "Grimbald bridge;"<sup>1</sup> and, seeing that Knaresborough is exactly due south of Ripon, it follows that the author came from the south of Knaresborough. We seem, in fact, to trace the general direction of his first ride to Ripon, viz. from his home to the farther side of Derbyshire, through the north-west corner of Scarsdale to Sheffield, and "so northward" through Leeds and Knaresborough. Nothing can be more satisfactory.

A very interesting point is the author's love of farming and of horses. As to horses, he tells us how he first went to Ripon to buy colts (p. 65); how many secrets of horse-dealing he could tell; how, in buying horses, he had been

<sup>1</sup> Canon Simmons kindly tells me—"I find from the Ordnance Map that Grimbald Bridge is the one over the Nidd below the town, *i.e.* a mile or a mile and a quarter from the town. There are two crossing to the town. The upper one is on the Harrogate Road, a second "Low Bridge," and then the third, "Grimbald bridge."

beguiled a hundred times and more (p. 63); how he used to say to his customers that, if ever they ventured to trust any horse-dealer, they had better trust himself (p. 73); and how he had in his possession at one time as many as sixty mares, and five or six horses (p. 60). In this connection, it becomes interesting to inquire if Sir Anthony Fitzherbert was fond of horses likewise.

It so happens that this question can certainly be answered in the affirmative; and I have here to acknowledge, with pleasure and gratitude, the assistance which I have received from one of the family,<sup>1</sup> the Rev. Reginald Fitzherbert, of Somersal Herbert, Derbyshire. He has been at the trouble of transcribing Sir Anthony's will, a complete copy of which he contributed to "The Reliquary," No. 84, vol. xxi. April, 1881, p. 234. I here insert, by his kind permission, his remarks upon the subject, together with such extracts from the will as seem most material for our present purpose.

"The following will of Sir Anthony Fitzherbert, of Norbury, is transcribed from the Office Copy at Somerset House (Dingley, fol. 20), and is now printed, as I believe, for the first time. The contractions have been written out *in extenso*.

"Sir Anthony married, secondly, the co-heir of Richard Cotton, and with her he acquired the estate of Hampstall Ridware, which he probably kept in his own hands, and farmed himself. He succeeded his brother John at Norbury in 1531, and died there in 1538, aged 68.

"Fuller, in his *Worthies*, says that Sir Anthony Fitzherbert's books are 'monuments which will longer continue his Memory than the flat blew marble stone in Norbury Church under which he lieth interred.' Camden (Gibson's ed. 1753, vol. i. p. 271) calls him *Chief Justice* of the Common

<sup>1</sup> It is the family tradition (which should go for something), that the author of the Book of Husbandry was Sir Anthony Fitzherbert, and no other.

Pleas ; but Thoroton (Notts., ed. 1677, p. 344) says, 'I do not find that Anthony Fitzherbert was ever Chief Justice ;' and it does not appear that he was more than, as he describes himself, "oon of the kings Justices."

EXTRACTS FROM  
TESTAMENTUM ANTHONII FITZHERBERT.

"In nomine patris et filii et spiritus sancti Amen.

"I Anthony ffitzherbert oon of the kings Justices being hole in body and of parfite remembraunce thanks to almighty god make my last will and testament the xii day of October in the xxix<sup>th</sup> yere of the Reign of king Henry the eight<sup>1</sup> in fourme folowing ffirst I bequeth my soule to almighty god my saviour criste my Redemer and to our blissed Lady his mother and to Mighel my patron and to all the holy company of hevyn. . . .

And I bequethe XLs to amende the high wayes<sup>2</sup> bitwixt Abbottes Bromley [and] Vtaxather. And to sir Thomas ffitzwilliam Lord Admyrall fyve markes *and the best horsse or gelding that I haue*. And to Humfrey Cotton V markes to ffraunces Cotton fyve markes and *a gelding or a horsse of XLs price*. And to euery of my housholde seruantes a quarter wagis besides their wagis due. And to euery of my seruantes *that be used to Ryde with me*<sup>3</sup> oon heyffer of two yere olde and vpward or ellse oon felde Colt of that age.

And to sir Henry Sacheuerell and to sir William Basset to euery of them oon horsse Colt of twoo yeres olde and aboue. . . .

And *tenne kyne* and *a bull* and *VIII oxen* and *a wayn* and the *ploez and other thinges longing to a wayne*, to remayn at Rydwar for heire Lomes. And *XII mares*, and *a stallande*, and VI. fetherbeddes and VI mattresses and Couerynges blankettes shetes and Counterpoyntes thereunto to logge honest gentilmen, and to remain at Rydwar for heire lomes to the heires males of ffitzherbert . . .

And I will that Kateryn my doughter haue *fourre bullockes* and *four heiffers* and twoo ffetherbeddes and twoo bolsters and twoo mattresse and bolsters for them and shetes blankettes and other stuffe to make hir twoo good beddis yf I geve hir non by my life. . . .

<sup>1</sup> The date is, therefore, October 12, 1537.—W.W.S.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 81.—W.W.S.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 93.—W.W.S.

And where I caused Thomas ffitzherbert to surrendre the Indenture of *the fferme of the parsonage of Castelton in the Peeke* to the Abbot of Vayll Royal to the intent, to thentent (*sic*) that I and he shulde haue fourty yeres terme therin more then was in the olde Indenture, And to take a newe leesse for terme of threscore and tenne yeres which olde leesse the same Thomas had by the mariage of the doughter and heire of sir Arthur Eyre whiche sir Arthur Eyre willed that his bastard sonne shulde haue fyve markes yerely of the profites of the same fferme as apperith by his wille wherfor I will that the same bastard sonne haue the same fyve markes according to the same will And the Residue of the profites of the same fferme I will and require the same Thomas my sonne that John ffitzherbert his brother may haue the profites therof during his lyfe And after his decesse Richard ffitzherbert his brother And I will that *my fferme at Caldon* And the *fferme that I haue of the King* And the *howe Grange* Remain to my heires males of Norbury And I will that the *lande that I purchased at Whittington besides Lichefelde* goo foreuer to kepe the obite at North wynfelde for my brother doctour soule according to his will and to be made sure—therfor as moche as may reasonably be devised therfor to stande with the lawe yf I do not assigne other landes therfor hereafter. . . .

And I will that my Cosyn Richard Coton haue *one good amblyng Colt* or *oon good horsse* of myn to Ryde on by the discrecion of my wife and my son Thomas to be deliuered And to my Cosyn Alice his wyfe oon of my best habites with the Cloke and Hood and the Lynyng and the furr of the same. Written the day and yere abouesaid."

The will was proved at Lichfield, August 26, 1538.

I may add that the will mentions his wife dame Maude, his son Thomas, his three younger sons John, Richard, and William, and his daughter Kateryn; also his cousin Richard Coton and his wife Alice. Thomas Fitzherbert married the daughter of Sir Arthur Eyre.

It hence appears that Sir Anthony had no less than *three farms*, one at Castleton in the Peak, one at Caldon in Staffordshire, near Dove Dale, and a farm which he held of the King; besides the How Grange and some land at Whittington near Lichfield, as also some purchased lands and

tenements in the counties of Stafford, Northampton, and Warwick, mentioned in a part of the will which I have not quoted. There was also the estate of Hampstall Ridware in Staffordshire, to which he attached considerable importance, directing his heir-looms to be kept there. He also makes mention, in all, of *six horses* (including a stallion and two geldings), *twelve mares, three colts, one bull, four bullocks, five heifers, eight oxen, and ten cows*, though it is obvious that these by no means include all his stock, but merely a selection from it. All this precisely agrees with the statements in the Book of Husbandry.

I do not think it necessary to pursue the subject further, but a word must be added as to the chronology. Not having seen the first edition of the Book of Husbandry printed by Pynson in 1523, I cannot certainly say whether the statement that the author had "been a householder for 40 years" occurs there. It occurs, however, in an undated edition by Peter Treuerys,<sup>1</sup> which is certainly the *second* edition, and printed between 1521 and 1531, as Treuerys is only known to have printed books during that period. Now this edition professes to have corrections and additions, the title being—"Here bygynneth a newe tracte or treatis moost *profytable* for all husbände men / and very [frutefu]ll for all other persones to rede / newly cor[rected] & amended by the auctour with to dyuerse other thynges added thervnto;" and it agrees very closely with the copy here printed. The date assigned for Sir Anthony Fitzherbert's birth is 1470. If we suppose him to have begun housekeeping at 21, a period of 40 years will

<sup>1</sup> This early edition, clearly the *second*, and using Pynson's woodcut, was kindly pointed out to me by Mr. Bradshaw. It is not noticed in the usual books upon early printing, but a copy of it exists in the Cambridge University Library. The woodcut on the title-page is (as I have just said) the same as that on the title-page of the first edition.

bring us to 1531, which is not inconsistent with his statement, if such be the date of the copy above mentioned. If, however, it should appear that the statement exists even in the first edition printed in 1523, then the "forty years" would lead us to suppose that, if the assigned date of his birth be correct, Sir Anthony began to be a householder, in his own estimation, at the early age of twelve or thirteen. This is of course a difficulty, but not an insuperable one, for the phrase "have been a householder" is somewhat vague, and the phrase "forty years or more" has rather the air of a rhetorical flourish.

It may here be noticed that Berthelet's first edition (here reprinted) has nothing on the title-page but the words "THE BOKE OF HUSBANDRY," with the date 1534 below. Later reprints which follow Berthelet have accordingly no statement as to the book being "newly corrected and amended by the auctour," etc.; whilst those which follow Treuerys naturally copy it. This accounts for the fact that the later editions are, to the best of my belief, all very much the same, and that the claim to possess "corrections and amendments" means practically nothing, except with reference to the *first* edition only.

Of Sir Anthony Fitzherbert, one of the best accounts seems to be that given in the *Biographia Britannica*, 1750, vol. iii. p. 1935, where Camden's statement as to his being "Chief Justice" is refuted. Briefly recapitulated, this account tells us that he was born in 1470, and was the younger son of Ralph Fitzherbert, Esq., of Norbury in Derbyshire; that he went to Oxford, and thence to the Inns of Court; was made a serjeant-at-law, Nov. 18, 1511; was knighted in 1516; was made one of his majesty's serjeants-at-law, and finally one of the Justices of the Court of Common Pleas in 1523. He died May 27, 1538, and was buried at Norbury. "Two things are mentioned in reference to his conduct; first, that, without fear

of his power, he openly opposed Cardinal Wolsey in the height of his favour; the other, that, when he came to lie upon his death-bed, foreseeing the changes that were like to happen in the Church as well as State, he pressed his children in very strong terms to promise him solemnly, neither to accept grants, nor to make purchases of abbey-lands; which it is said they did, and adhered constantly to that promise, though much to their own loss." The authorities referred to are Pits, *De Illustribus Angliæ Scriptoribus*, p. 707; Wood, *Athenæ Oxonienses*, i. col. 50; Fuller, *Worthies, Derbyshire*, p. 233; Tanner, *Bibliotheca Britannico-Hibernica*, p. 283; *Chronica Juridicialia*, pp. 153, 155., etc.

The number of editions of the Book of Husbandry is so large, and many of these are nevertheless so scarce, that I do not suppose the list here subjoined is exhaustive; nor have I much information about some of them. I merely mention what I have found, with some authorities.

1. A newe tracte or treatyse moost profytable for all Husbandemen, and very frutefull for all other persons to rede. London: by Rycharde Pynson. 4to. (1523). See *Typographical Antiquities*, by Ames and Herbert, ed. Dibdin, ii. 503. This is the *first* edition, and very rare. It was described by Dibdin from Heber's copy, supposed to be unique. See Heber's Catalogue, part ix. p. 61. The note in Hazlitt that a copy of this edition is in the Bodleian Library is a mistake, as I have ascertained. It is not dated, but the Book on Surveying, printed just afterwards, is dated 1523; and there is no doubt as to the date. It is remarkable for an engraving upon the title-page, representing two oxen drawing a plough, with drivers.

2. "Here begynneth a newe tracte," etc. (See p. xx.) London, Southwark; by P. Treuerys, 4to. (No date; but between 1521 and 1531). In the Camb. Univ. Library. This

is the only other edition which (as far as I know) has the picture of ploughing upon the title-page.<sup>1</sup>

3. By Thomas Berthelet, in 1532 (Lowndes). It is "12mo in size, but in eights by signatures," and therefore 8vo. (A. Wallis; Derby Mercury, Nov. 1869).

4. By Thomas Berthelet; 8vo.; the edition here reprinted from the copy in the Cambridge University Library. There are also two copies of it in the Bodleian Library at Oxford. The title-page has merely the words: "THE | BOKE OF | HVS- | BANDRY;" printed within a border bearing the date 1534. The reverse of the title-page is blank. On the second leaf, marked A ij, begins "The authours prologue." The rest of sheet A (which contains in all only *six* leaves) is occupied with the Prologue and "the Table;" and is not foliated. Then follow sheets B to M, all of *eight* leaves, and sheet N, of *two* leaves only. Sheets B to H have the folios numbered from 1 to 56; sheets I, K, L have the folios numbered from 51 to 75; and sheets M and N, from 81 to 90. Thus the six numbers 51-56 occur twice over, and the five numbers 76-80 do not occur at all. It is not quite certain that the apparent date is also the real one; for at the end of Berthelet's print of Xenophon's treatise of Housholde, which has 1534 within the same border upon the title-page, there is a colophon giving the date as 1537. This border was evidently in use for at least three years. See Dibdin, iii. 287.

5. By Berthelet; 1546. This edition also contains the Treatise on Surveying. (Lowndes; compare Dibdin, iii. 348.)

6. By Berthelet; 1548. (Lowndes; Dibdin, iii. 334, where it is described as 12mo.) A copy of this is noticed in the Catalogue of the Huth Library.

<sup>1</sup> Probably printed in 1531, as it professes to be "amended, with dyuerse other thynges added therunto;" for observe, that after this date, editions follow in quick succession.

7. By Thomas Marshe ; (1560). This edition is said to be "newly corrected and amended by the author, Fitzherbarde ;" but is, of course, a mere reprint. See remarks upon this above. (Lowndes ; Dibdin, iv. 534.) In Arber's Transcript of the Stationers' Registers, i. 128, we find — "Recevyd of *Thomas Marshe* for his lycense for pryntinge of a boke Called the boke of husbondry, graunted the xx of June [1560] . . . iiii. d. Hence the date, which is not given, may be inferred.

8. By John Awdeley ; 16mo. 1562 ; "wyth diuers addicions put ther-vnto." (Dibdin, iv. 566.)

9. By John Awdeley ; 8vo. 1576 ; "with diuers additions put therunto." (Dibdin, iv. 568.)

10. Fitzharbert's | BOOKE OF | Husbandrie. | DEVIDED Into foure seuerall Bookes, very ne|cessary and profitable for all sorts | of people. *And now newlie corrected, amended, and reduced into a more pleasing forme of English then before.* Ecclesiast. 10. ver. 28. Better is he that laboureth, and hath plentiousnesse of all thinges, then hee that is gorgious | and wanteth bread. AT LONDON, | Printed by J. R. for Edward White, and are | to be sold at his shoppe, at the little North doore of Paules Church, at the signe of the Gunne. | Anno Dom. 1598. Dedicated "To the Worshipfull Maister *Henrie Iackman Esquire*" . . . by "Your Worships in affection I. R." Of this book I shall say more below. I have used the copy in the Douce Collection in the Bodleian Library.<sup>1</sup>

11, etc. There are numerous other editions. Hazlitt mentions one by R. Kele (no date), "newlye corrected and amended by the auctor Fitzherbarde, with dyuers additions put therunto." Lowndes says : "London, by Richard Kele, 16mo. There are two editions, one containing H, the other I,

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Wallis (see p. xiii, note 2) mentions also an undated edition, printed by *James Roberts* for E. White.

in eights." Dibdin (iii. 533) mentions one by John Wayland, 8vo. (no date), Lowndes mentions an edition printed at London "in the Hovs of Tho. Berthelet," 16mo.; eighty leaves; also—another edition, slightly differing in orthography, and having at the end "Cum privilegio;" also another "in the House of Thomas Berthelet," 16mo. A, 6 leaves, B—M, in eights, N, 2 leaves, with the date of 1534 on the title-page; but this can be nothing else than the very book here reprinted, and it is not clear why he mentions it again. Lowndes also notices undated editions by John Walley, Robert Toye, Jugge, and Myddylton.

It hence appears that the book was frequently reprinted between 1523 and 1598, but the last of these editions was such as to destroy its popularity, and I am not aware that it was ever again reprinted except in 1767, when the Books on Husbandry and Surveying were reprinted together<sup>1</sup> in a form strongly resembling the edition of 1534.<sup>2</sup> The title of this book is—"Certain Ancient Tracts concerning the management of Landed Property reprinted. London, printed for C. Bathurst and J. Newbery; 1767." This is a fairly good reprint, with the old spelling carefully preserved; but has neither note nor comment of any kind. A copy of it kindly lent me by Mr. Furnivall has proved very useful.

The editions of the Book on Surveying are almost as numerous as those of the Book on Husbandry, though this was hardly to be expected, considering its more learned and technical character. It is not necessary to speak here particularly of Sir Anthony Fitzherbert's acknowledged works.

<sup>1</sup> The volume also contains a translation of Xenophon's Treatise of Household (*Λόγος οἰκονομικός*), written by "Gentian Heruet."

<sup>2</sup> The colophon is the same. The Book on Surveying is dated 1539. The copy in the Cambridge Univ. Library contains the Husbandry (1534); Surveying (1539); and Xenophon (1537); all bound together.

The most important are the Grand Abridgment of the Common Law (1514, folio), Office of Justices of the Peace (1538), Diversity of Courts (1539), and the New Natura Brevium, of which the ninth edition, with a commentary by Lord Hale, appeared in 1794. The first edition of the Grand Abridgment was printed by Pynson, who was also the printer of the first edition of the Book of Husbandry. The New Natura Brevium was printed in 1534 by Berthelet, who reprinted the Book of Husbandry in the same year. In a bookseller's catalogue, March, 1880, I chanced to see the following. "Early English Printing; Black Letter; Law Books in Latin and Norman-French (1543-51). Natura Brevium; newly and most trewely corrected with diverse additions of statutes bokes cases plees in abatements, etc.; London, Wyllyam Powel, 1551.—Articuli ad Narrationes novas; London, W. Powel, 1547.—Diuersite de courtz et lour jurisdictiones, et alia necessaria et utilia, London, W. Myddylton, 1543. The three works in 1 vol., sm. 8vo., old calf neat, quite perfect and very rare, 21s."

The present volume contains a careful reprint of Berthelet's edition of 1534, which is a fairly good one. I have collated it throughout with the curious edition of 1598, which abounds with "corrections," some of them no improvements, and with additional articles. It is a very curious book, and I have given all the more interesting variations in the notes, with a description of the additions. The author, who only gives his initials "I. R." (by which initials I have been often obliged to quote him<sup>1</sup>) has the effrontery to tell us that he has reduced Fitzherbert's work "into a more pleasing forme of English then before;" and says that he has "labored to purge the same from the barbarisme of the former times." Again he addresses the reader, saying—"Gentle Reader, being vrged

<sup>1</sup> Possibly James Roberts; see p. xxiv, note 1.

by the consideration of the necessitie of this worke, and finding it almost cast into perpetuall obliuion, I haue purged it from the first forme of mis sounding termes to our daintie eares." This means, of course, that he has altered terms which he did not understand, and occasionally turns sense into nonsense ; yet he seems to have taken considerable pains with his author, and his additions are frequently to the point. Whether his discourses upon the keeping of poultry (p. 145, note to sect. 144) were really due to his "owne experience in byrds and foules," or whether he copied much of it from some of his predecessors, I have not been curious to discover. His references to Virgil, to the fable of Cynthia and Endymion, the Cinyphian goats, and the rest, are in the worst possible taste, and he was evidently far too staunch a Protestant to be able to accept all Fitzherbert's religious views, though modestly and unobtrusively introduced. After carefully reading his production, I infinitely prefer Fitzherbert's "barbarisme" to I. R.'s pedantic mannerism, and I find the patronising tone of his occasionally stupid amendments to be almost insufferable ; but he may be forgiven for his zeal. The art of sinking in poetry has rarely been so well exemplified as in the verses which are printed at pp. 145 and 148.

The reader can best understand what I. R. conceives to be elegance of style by comparing the following extract with section 1 at p. 9.

"Chapter 2. ¶ By what a Husbandman cheefely liueth.

The most generall and *commonest experienst liuing* that the *toyle-imbracing* Husbandman liueth by, is either by plowing and sowing of his Corne, or by rearing and breeding of Cattell, and not the one without the other, *because they be adjuncts, and may not be disceuered*. Then sithens that the Plough is the first good instrument, by which the Husband-

men *rips from the Earths wombe a well-pleasing living, I thinke* it is most conuenient first to speake of the *forme, fashion, and making therof.*"

The words italicised (except in the title) are all his own.

The Glossarial Index, a very full one, was almost entirely prepared, in the first instance, by my eldest daughter, though I have since added a few explanations in some cases, and have revised the whole, at the same time verifying the references. As to the meaning of a few terms, I am still uncertain.

Fitzherbert's general style is plain, simple, and direct, and he evidently has the welfare of his reader at heart, to whom he offers kindly advice in a manner least calculated to give offence. He is in general grave and practical, but there are a few touches of quiet humour in his remarks upon horse-dealing. "Howe be it I saye to my customers, and those that bye any horses of me, and [*if*] euer they wil trust any hors-master or corser whyle they lyue, truste me." I would have trusted him implicitly.

The difficulties of his language arise almost entirely from the presence of numerous technical terms ; and it is, indeed, this fact that renders his book one of considerable philological interest, and adapts it for publication by the English Dialect Society. By way of a small contribution to English etymology, I beg leave to take a single instance, and to consider what he has to tell us about the word *peruse*.

The whole difficulty as to the etymology of this word arises from the change of sense ; it is now used in such a way that the derivation from *per-* and *use* is not obvious ; nor does it commend itself to such as are unacquainted with historical method. For this reason, some etymologists, including Webster, have imagined that it arose from *peruse* = *pervise* to see thoroughly, the *i* being dropped, and the *u* (really *v*) being mistaken for the vowel. This is one of those wholly

unscrupulous fictions to which but too many incline, as if the cause of truth could ever be helped forward by means of deliberate invention. But there is no such word as *peruse*, nor any French *perviser*. Fitzherbert is one of the earliest authorities for *peruse*, though it also occurs in Skelton, Philip Sparrow, l. 814. Investigation will show that, at the commencement of the sixteenth century, there was a fashion of using words compounded with *per-*, a number of which I have given in my Dictionary, s. v. *peruse*. The old sense was 'to use up, to go through thoroughly, to attend to one by one;' and the word was sometimes spelt with a *v*, because *use* (*use*) was generally so spelt. Examples are:—

"Let hym [i.e. the husbandman who wants to reckon the tithe of his corn] goo to the ende of his lande, and begynne and tell [i.e. count] .ix. sheues, and let hym caste out the .x. shefe in the name of god, and so to *peruse* from lande to lande, tyll he have trewely tythed all his corne;" sect. 30, l. 4.

"And thus [let the shepherd] *peruse* them all tyll he haue doone;" sect. 40, l. 23.

"Than [let the surveyor who is surveying property go] to the second howse on the same east side in lyke maner, and so to *peruse* from house to house tyll he come to St. Magnus churche;" Book of Surveying (1767), chap. xix.

"Begyn to plowe a forowe in the middes of the side of the land, and cast it downe as yf thou shulde falowe it, and so *peruse* both sydes tyl the rygge be cast down," etc.; Book of Surveying (1767); chap. xxiv.

The special application to a book may be seen in Baret's *Alvearie*: "To ouerlooke and *peruse* a booke againe, *Re-tractare librum*." And accordingly it need not surprise us that Levins, in 1570, translated to *peruse* by *peruti*.

There is just one more suggestion which I venture to make, though I fear, like most conjectures which are made with

respect to Shakespeare, it is probably valueless. When King Lear appears, in Act iv. sc. 4—

“Crowned with rank fumiter and furrow-weeds,  
With *hor-docks*, hemlock, nettles, cuckoo-flowers,  
Darnel, and *all the idle weeds that grow*  
*In our sustaining corn*”—

I cannot help being reminded of Fitzherbert's list of weeds in sect. 20 (p. 29), in which he includes *haudoddes*, *i.e.* corn blue-bottles, as is obvious from his description; see also Britten and Holland's English Plant-names. It is certainly remarkable that the *haudod* is precisely one of “the idle weeds that grow in corn,” and that its bright colour would be particularly attractive to the gatherer of a wild garland. We must not, however, overlook the form *hardhake*, which Mr. Wright has found in a MS. herbal as a name for the knapweed; see his note upon the passage. The two results do not, however, greatly differ, and it is conceivable that the same name could be applied at different times to *both* these flowers, the latter being *Centaurea nigra*, and the former *Centaurea Cyanus*. We also find the term *hardewes*, occurring as a name for the wild succory; see *Hawdod* in the Glossarial Index, p. 156. In any case, the proposal of Dr. Prior to explain *hordock* by the burdock (*Arctium lappa*), merely because he thinks the burs were sometimes entangled with flax, and so formed lumps in it called *hards*, is a wild guess that should be rejected. *Hards* are simply the coarse parts of flax, without any reference to burdocks whatever.

The wood-cut on the title-page is copied from the edition of 1598. The longer handle of the plough is on the left. See the description on p. 128.

## ERRATA.

---

In the first side-note on p. 18, *for* Beating *read* Beeting. See *Beate* in the Glossary, p. 150.

P. 120, sect. 169, l. 36. For *a ut* read *aut*.

P. 136. Headline. For *Notes* (34. 1—43) read *Notes* (34. 1—43).

P. 140, last line. For *Hellebor* read *Hellybor*.



## THE BOKE OF HVSBANDRY.

---

### ✚ The authors prologue.

*Sit ista questio.* This is the questyon, whervnto is Man is born to labour.  
euerye manne ordeyned? And as Job saythe, *Homo nascitur ad laborem, sicut avis ad volandum*: That is  
4 to saye, a man is ordeyned and borne to do labour, as  
a bird is ordeyned to flye. And the Apostle saythe,  
*Qui non laborat, non manducet: Debet enim in obsequio dei laborare, qui de bonis eius vult manducare*: That is to saye,  
8 he that laboureth not, shulde not eate, and he ought to He that laboureth not should not eat.  
labour and doo goddes warke, that wyll eate of his goodes  
or gyftes. The whiche is an harde texte after the lyterall  
sence. For by the letter, the kynge, the quene, nor all  
12 other lordes spirituall and temporal shuld not eate, with-  
out they shuld labour, the whiche were vncomely, and  
not conueniente for suche estates to labour. But who The Book of the Chess  
that redeth in the boke of the moralytes of the chesse,  
16 shal therby perceyue, that euerye man, from the hiest  
degree to the lowest, is set and ordeyned to haue labour  
and occupation; and that boke is deuyded in vi. degrees, is divided into six degrees,

viz. king,  
queen,  
bishops,  
knights,  
judges, and  
yeomen,

that is to saye, the kynge, the quene, the byshops, the  
20 knightes, the iudges, and the yomenne. In the which  
boke is shewed theyr degrees, theyr auctorytyes, theyr  
warkes, and theyr occupations, and what they ought to  
do. And they so doynge, and executynge theyr aucto-  
24 rytyes, warkes, and occupatyons, haue a wonders great  
study and labour, of the whiche auctorytyes, occupa-  
tions, and warkes, were at this tyme too longe to wryte.

concerning  
which it is  
too long to  
write.

Wherfore I remytte that boke as myn auctour therof:  
28 The whiche boke were necessary to be knowen of euery  
degree, that they myghte doo and ordre them selfe ac-  
cordinge to the same. And in so moche the yomen in  
the sayde moralytyes and game of the chesse be set  
32 before to labour, defende, and maynteyne all the other  
hyer estates, the whiche yomen represent the common  
people, as husbandes and labourers, therfore I purpose  
to speake fyrste of husbandrye.

As the yeo-  
men defend  
the rest, I  
shall speak  
of husband-  
ry.

Finis.

## ¶ The table.

	PAGE
1. First wherby husbande men do lyue. fo. i. <sup>1</sup> . . . . .	9
2. Of dyuers maner of plowes. fol. eod. . . . .	9
3. To knowe the names of all the partes of the ploughe. fol. ii. .	10
4. The temprynge of plowes. fo. iii. . . . .	12
5. ¶ The necessary thynges that belonge to a plowe, carte, or wayne. fol. iii. . . . .	14
6. ¶ Whether is better, a plowe of oxen or a plowe of horses. fol. v.	15
7. ¶ The dyligence and the attendaunce that a husbande shulde gyue to his warke, in maner of an other prologue, and a specyall grounde of all this treatyse. fol. vi. . . . .	16
8. ¶ Howe a manne shulde plowe all maner of landes all tymes of the yere. fo. vii. . . . .	17
9. To plowe for pees and beanes. fol. viii. . . . .	18
10. Howe to sowe bothe pees and beanes. fol. viii. . . . .	18
11. Sede of Discrecyon. fol. ix. . . . .	20
12. Howe all maner of corne shulde be sowen. folio eodem. .	21
13. To sowe barley. fol. x. . . . .	22
14. To sowe otes. fol. xi. . . . .	23
15. To harowe all maner of cornes. fol. xii. . . . .	24
16. To falowe. fol. xiii. . . . .	25
17. To carry out donge or mucke, and to sprede it. fol. xiiii. .	27
18. To set out the shepe-folde. fol. xv. . . . .	28
19. To cary wode and other necessities. fol. xvi. . . . .	29
20. To knowe dyuers maner of wedes. fol. eod. . . . .	29
21. To wede corne. fol. xvii. . . . .	31
22. The fyrste sturrynge : and (23) to mowe grasse. foli. xviii. .	32
24. How forkes and rakes shuld be made. fo. xix. . . . .	33
25. To tedde and make hey. fol. eod. . . . .	33
26. Howe rye shulde be shorne. fol. xx. . . . .	35
27. Howe to shere whete. fol. xxi. . . . .	35
28. To mowe or shere barley and otes. fol. eod. . . . .	36

<sup>1</sup> The references are to the folios of the original edition. That the reader may find his place more readily, I have *numbered* each section. The numbers in thick type are, accordingly, not in the original.

29.	To repe or mowe pees and beanes.	fol. xxii.	36
30.	Howe all maner of corne shoulde be tythed.	folio eodem .	37
31.	Howe all maner of corne shoulde be couered.	fol. xxiii.	38
32.	To lode corne and mowe it.	fol. eod.	38
33.	The seconde sturryinge.	fo. xxiiii.	39
34.	To sowe whete and rye.	fol. eodem .	39
35.	To thresshe and wynowe corne.	fol. xxv.	41
36.	To seuer beanes, pees, and fetches.	fol. eod.	41
37.	Of shepe, and what tyme of the yere the rammes shulde be put to the ewes.	fol. xxvi.	42
38.	To make a ewe to loue her lambe.	fol. xxvii.	43
39.	What tyme lambes shulde be wayned.	fo. eod.	44
40.	To drawe shepe and seuer them in dyuerse partes.	fol. xxviii.	44
41.	To belte shepe.	fol. xxix.	45
42.	To grece shepe.	fol. eod.	46
43.	To medle terre.	fol. eodem .	46
44.	To make brome salue.	fol. eod.	46
45.	If a shepe haue mathes.	fol. xxx.	47
46.	Blyndenes of shepe and other dyseases, and remedyes therfore. fo. eod.		47
47.	The worme in a shepes fote, and helpe therfore.	fol. xxxi.	48
48.	The bloudde, and remedye if he comme betyme.	fol. eodem	48
49.	The pockes, and remedye therfore.	fol. eod.	49
50.	The wode euyl, and remedye therfore.	fol. 32.	49
51.	To washe shepe.	fol. eod.	49
52.	To shere shepe.	fol. eod.	50
53.	To drawe and seuer the bad shepe frome the good.	fol. eod.	50
54.	What thyng rotte shepe.	fol. xxxiii.	50
55.	To knowe a rotten shepe dyuerse maner ways, wherof some of them wyll not fayle.	fol. xxxiiii.	51
56.	To by leane cattell.	fol. eod.	52
57.	To by fatte cattell.	fol. xxxv.	53
58.	Dyuerse sickenneses of cattell, and remedies therfore, and fyrste of murren.	fol. eod.	53
59.	Long sought, and remedye therfore.	fo. xxxvi.	54
60.	Dewbolue, <sup>1</sup> and the harde remedye therfore.	fol. eod.	55
61.	Ryson vpon, and the remedye therfore.	fol. xxxvii.	55
62.	The turne, and remedye therfore.	fol. eod.	56
63.	The warribred, & remedye therfore.	fol. xxxviii.	56

<sup>1</sup> Read Dewbolne.

64.	The foule, and remedy therfore.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	57
65.	The goute without remedy.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	57
66.	To rere calues.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	57
67.	To gelde calues.	fol. xxxix.	. . . . .	58
68.	Horses and mares to drawe.	fol. xl.	. . . . .	59
69.	¶ The losse of a lambe, a calfe, or a foole.	fol. xli.	. . . . .	61
70.	What cattell shulde go together in oone pasture.	fol. xlii.	. . . . .	62
71.	The properties of horses.	fol. xliii.	. . . . .	63
72.	The two propertyes that a horse hath of a man.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	63
73.	The ii. propertyes of a bauson.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	64
74.	The iii. properties of a lyon.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	64
75.	The ix. properties of an oxe.	fol. xliiii.	. . . . .	64
76.	The ix. properties of an hare.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	64
77.	The ix. properties of a foxe.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	64
78.	The ix. properties of an asse.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	65
79.	The x. properties of a woman.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	65
80.	The diseases and soraunce of horses.	fol. xlv.	. . . . .	65
81.	The lampas.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	65
82.	The barbes.	fo. eod.	. . . . .	66
83.	Mournynge on the tonge.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	66
84.	Pursye.	fo. eod.	. . . . .	66
85.	Broken wynded.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	66
86.	Glaunders.	fo. eod.	. . . . .	66
87.	Mournynge on the chynne.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	66
88.	Stranguelyon.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	67
89.	The hawe.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	67
90.	Blyndnesse.	fol. xlvi.	. . . . .	67
91.	Uyues.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	67
92.	The cordes.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	67
93.	¶ The farcyon.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	67
94.	¶ A malander.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	68
95.	¶ A salander.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	68
96.	¶ A serewe.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	68
97.	¶ A splent.	fo. eod.	. . . . .	68
98.	¶ A rynebone.	fol. xlvii.	. . . . .	69
99.	¶ Wyndgall.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	69
100.	¶ Morfounde.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	69
101.	¶ The coltes euyll.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	69
102.	¶ The bottes.	fo. eod.	. . . . .	70
103.	¶ The wormes.	fol. eod.	. . . . .	70

104.	¶ Affrayd.	fo. eod.	70
105.	¶ Nauylgall.	fo. eod.	70
106.	¶ A spauen.	fol. eod.	70
107.	¶ A curbe.	fol. eod.	71
108.	¶ The stryngge-halte.	fol. eod.	71
109.	¶ Enterfyre.	fo. eod.	71
110.	¶ Mylletes.	fol. eod.	71
111.	¶ The paynes.	fol. eod.	71
112.	¶ Cratches.	fol. eod.	72
113.	¶ Attaynt.	fol. xlix.	72
114.	¶ Grauelynge.	fol. eod.	72
115.	¶ Acloyd.	fol. eod.	72
116.	¶ The scabbe.	fol. eod.	72
117.	¶ Lowsy.	fol. eod.	72
118.	¶ Wartes.	fol. eod.	73
119.	¶ The sayenge of the frenche man.	fo. eod.	73
120.	¶ The dyuersitie bytwene a horse mayster, a corser, and a horse leche.	fol. l.	74
121.	¶ Of swyne.	fo. eod.	74
122.	¶ Of bees.	fol. li.	75
123.	¶ How to kepe beastes & other catel.	fol. lii.	76
124.	¶ To get settes and set them.	fol. liii.	78
125.	¶ To make a dyche.	fol. liiii.	79
126.	¶ To make a hedge.	fol. eod.	79
127.	¶ To plasshe and pleche a hedge.	fol. eod.	80
128.	¶ To mende a hye waye.	fo. lv.	81
129.	¶ To remoue and sette trees.	fo. lvi.	82
130.	¶ Trees to be sette without rootes and growe.	fol. lvii.	83
131.	¶ To fell woode for houssholde or to sell.	fol. eodem.	83
132.	¶ To shrede, lop, or crop trees.	fol. lviii.	84
133.	¶ Howe a man shoulde shrede loppe or croppe trees.	fol. eod.	85
134.	¶ To sell woode or tymbre.	fol. lix.	85
135.	¶ To kepe sprynge woode.	fo. lx.	86
136.	¶ Necessary thynges belongynge to graffynge.	fol. eod.	87
137.	¶ What fruyte shulde be first grafted.	fol. lxi.	88
138.	¶ Howe to graffe.	fol. eod.	88
139.	¶ To graffe bytwene the barke and the tree.	fol. lxii.	89
140.	¶ To nourysshe all maner of stone fruyte and nuttes.	fol. lxiii.	90
141.	¶ A shorte information for a yonge gentyllman that entendeth to thryue.	fol. eod.	90

142.	A lesson made in Englysshe verses, that a gentylmans seruaunte shall forget none of his gere in his inne behynde hym. fo. lxxv. . . . .	93
143.	A prologe for the wyues occupation. fo. eod. . . . .	93
144.	A lesson for the wyfe. fol. eod. . . . .	94
145.	What thynges the wyfe of ryghte is bounde to do. fol. lxxvi. . . . .	94
146.	What warkes the wyfe oughte to doo generally. fo. eod. . . . .	95
147.	To kepe measure in spendynge. fo. lxxvii. . . . .	98
148.	To eate within thy tedure. fo. lxxviii. . . . .	99
149.	A shorte lesson vnto the husbnde. fol. lxxix. . . . .	101
150.	Howe menne of hye degree do kepe measure. fol. eodem. . . . .	101
151.	Prodygalytie in outragious and costelye araye. fol. lxx. . . . .	102
152.	Of delycyous meates and drynkes. fol. eod. . . . .	103
153.	Of outragious playe and game. fo. lxxi. . . . .	104
154.	A prologue of the thyrd sayinge of the philosopher. fo. lxxii. . . . .	105
155.	A dyuersytie bytwene predycation and doctryne. fol. eodem. . . . .	105
156.	What is rychesse. fo. lxxiii. . . . .	106
157.	What is the propertie of a rych man. fo. lxxiiii. . . . .	108
158.	What ioyes & pleasures are in heuen. fo. lxxv. . . . .	109
159.	What thyng pleaseth god most. fol. lxxvi. . . . .	109
160.	What be goddes commaundementes. fo. eod. . . . .	110
161.	Howe a man shulde loue god and please hym. fol. eodem. . . . .	110
162.	Howe a man shoulde loue his neyghbour. fol. lxxvii. . . . .	111
163.	Of prayer that pleaseth god verie moche. folio lxxviii. . . . .	112
164.	What thyng letteth prayer. fol. eod. . . . .	112
165.	Howe a man shulde praye. fo. lxxix. . . . .	113
166.	A mean to put away ydle thoughtes in prayenge. fol. lxxx. . . . .	115
167.	A meane to auoyde temptation. fol. lxxxi. . . . .	116
168.	Almes dedes pleaseth god moche. fo. lxxxii. . . . .	118
169.	The fyrst maner of almes dede. fo. lxxxiii. . . . .	119
170.	The ii. maner of almes dede. fo. lxxxiiii. . . . .	120
171.	The iii. maner of almes dede. fol. lxxxv. . . . .	121
172.	What is the greatestt offence that a man maye doo and offende god in. fo. lxxxvi. . . . .	122

Thus endeth the table.



1. ¶ Here begynneth the boke of husbandry, and fyrste  
where-by husbande-men do lyue. [Fol. 1.]

The mooste generall lyuynge that husbandes can haue, Husbandmen live by the plough and by cattle.  
is by plowyng and sowyng of theyr cornes, and rerynge  
or bredyng of theyr cattel, and not the one withoute  
4 the other. Than is the ploughe the mooste necessaryest  
instrumente that an husbande can occupy. Wherefore  
it is conuenient to be knowen, howe a plough shulde  
be made.

2. ¶ Dyuers maners of plowes.

There be plowes of dyuers makynge in dyuers Different kinds of ploughs.  
countreys, and in lyke wyse there be plowes of yren  
of dyuers facyons. And that is bycause there be many  
4 maner of groundes and soyles. Some whyte cley, some  
redde cley, some grauell or chylturne, some sande, some  
meane erthe, some medled with marle, and in many  
places heeth-grounde, and one ploughe wyll not serue  
8 in all places. Wherefore it is necessarye, to haue dyuers  
maners of plowes. In Sommersetshyre, about Zelcester, [Fol. 16.]  
Sommersetshire.  
the sharbeame, that in many places is called the ploughe-  
hedde, is foure or fyue foote longe, and it is brode and  
12 thynne. And that is bycause the lande is verye toughe,  
and wolde soke the ploughe into the erthe, yf the shar-  
beame were not long, brode, and thynne. In Kente Kent.  
they haue other maner of plowes, somme goo with  
16 wheles, as they doo in many other places, and some wyll  
tourne the sheldbredth at euery landes ende, and plowe  
all one waye. In Buckynghamshyre, are plowes made Buckinghamshire.

3. *The parts of the plough.*

of an nother maner, and also other maner of ploughe-  
 20 yrons, the whyche me semeth generally good, and lykely  
 to serue in many places, and specially if the ploughbeame  
 and sharbeame be foure ynches longer, betwene the  
 shethe and the ploughe-tayle, that the sheldbrede myght  
 24 come more a-slope: for those plowes gyue out to sodeinly,  
 and therfore they be the worse to drawe, and for noo  
 cause elles. In Leycestershyre, Lankesshyre, Yorkeshyre,  
 Lyncoln, Norfolke, Cambrydge-shyre, and manye other  
 28 countreyes, the plowes be of dyuers makinges, the whyche  
 were to longe processe to declare howe, &c. But how  
 so euer they be made, yf they be well tempered, and  
 goo well, they maye be the better suffred.

Leicester-  
shire, &c.

[Fol. 2.]

## 3. ¶ To knowe the names of all the partes of the plowe.

Parts of the  
plough.

Men that be no husbundes maye fortune to rede this  
 boke, that knowe not whiche is the ploughe-beame, the  
 sharebeame, the ploughe-shethe, the ploughe-tayle, the  
 4 stilte, the rest, the sheldbrede, the fenbrede, the roughe  
 staues, the ploughe-fote, the ploughe-eare or coke, the  
 share, the culture, and ploughe-mal. Perauenture I gyue  
 them these names here, as is vsed in my countre, and yet  
 8 in other countreyes they haue other names: wherfore ye  
 shall knowe, that the ploughe-beame is the longe tree  
 aboue, the whiche is a lytel bente. The sharbeame is the  
 tre vnderneath, where-vpon the share is set; the ploughe-  
 12 sheth is a thyn pece of drye woode, made of oke, that is  
 set fast in a morteyns in the plough-beame, and also in to  
 the share-beame, the whiche is the keye and the chiefe  
 bande of all the plough. The plough-tayle is that the  
 16 husbände holdeth in his hande, and the hynder ende of  
 the ploughebeame is put in a longe slyt, made in the same  
 tayle, and not set faste, but it maye ryse vp and go

Plough-  
beam.  
Share-beam.

Plough-  
sheath.

Plough-tail.

- dow[n]e, and is pynned behynde, and the same ploughe-  
20 taylor is set faste in a mortys, in the hynder ende of the  
sharebeame. The plough-stylte is on the ryghte syde of the ploughe, whervpon the rest is set; the rest is a lyttell  
[Fol. 2b.]  
Plough-stilt.  
Rest.  
pece of woode, pynned fast vpon the nether ende of the  
24 stylt, and to the sharebeame in the ferther ende. The  
sheldbrede is a brode pece of wodde, fast pinned to the  
ryghte side of the shethe in the ferther ende, and to the  
vtter syde of the stylte in the hynder ende. The fen-  
[Fol. 2b.]  
Shield-board.  
Fen-board.  
brede is a thyn borde, pynned or nayled moste commonly  
to the lyft syde of the shethe in the ferther ende, and to  
the ploughe-taylor in the hynder ende. And the sayde  
sheldbrede wolde come ouer the sayde shethe and fen-  
32 brede an inche, and to come past the myddes of the  
share, made with a sharpe edge, to receyue and turne the  
erthe whan the culture hath cut it. There be two rough  
Rough  
staves.  
staues in euery ploughe in the hynder ende, set a-slope  
36 betwene the ploughe-taylor and the stilt, to holde out  
and kepe the plough abrode in the hynder ende, and the  
one lenger than the other. The plough-fote is a lyttell  
Plough-foot.  
pece of wodde, with a croked ende set before in a mor-  
40 tays in the ploughe-beame, sette fast with wedges, to  
dryue vppe and downe, and it is a staye to order of  
what depenes the ploughe shall go. The ploughe-eare  
Plough-car.  
is made of thre peces of yren, nayled faste vnto the ryght  
44 syde of the plough-beame. And poore men haue a  
[Fol. 3.]  
croked pece of wode pynned faste to the ploughbeame.  
The share is a pece of yren, sharpe before and brode  
Share.  
behynde, a fote longe, made with a socket to be set on  
48 the ferther ende of the share-beame. The culture is a  
Coulter.  
bende pece of yren sette in a mortys in the myddes of  
the plough-beame, fastened with wedges on euery syde,  
and the backe therof is halfe an inche thycke and more,  
52 and three inches brode, and made kene before to cutte  
the erthe clene, and it must be wel steeled, and that

4. *The tempering of ploughs.*Plough-  
mall.

shall cause the easier draughte, and the yrens to laste moche lenger. The plough-mal<sup>1</sup> is a pece of harde  
56 woode, with a pynne put throughe, set in the plough-beame, in an augurs bore.

4. ¶ *The temprynge of plowes.*Tempering  
of ploughs.

Rest-baulk.

[Fol. 36.]

Slot wedges.

Narrow and  
broad tem-  
pering.Setting on  
of the share.

Nowe the plowes be made of dyuers maners; it is neces-  
sarye for an housbande, to knowe howe these plowes  
shulde be tempered, to plowe and turne clene, and to  
4 make no reste-balkes. A reste-balke is where the plough  
byteth at the poynte of the culture and share, and cutteth  
not the ground cleane to the forowe, that was plowed laste  
before, but leaueth a lyttell rydge standynge betwene,  
8 the whiche dothe brede thistyls, and other wedes. All  
these maner of plowes shulde haue all lyke one maner  
of temperyng in the yrens. Howe-be-it a man maye  
temper for one thyng in two or thre places, as for  
12 depnes. The fote is one: the setting of the culture of  
a depnes, is a-nother: and the thyrde is at the ploughe-  
tayle, where be two wedges, that be called slote-wedges:  
the one is in the slote above the beame, the other in  
16 the saide slote, vnder the plough-beame; and other whyle  
he wyll set bothe aboue, or bothe vnderne the, but alway  
let hym take good hede, and kepe one generall rule, that  
the hynder ende of the sharebeme alway touche the erthe,  
20 that it may kyll a worde,<sup>2</sup> or elles it goth not truly. The  
temperyng to go brode and narowe is in the setting of  
the culture: and with the dryuinge of his syde-wedges,  
forewedge, and helewedge, whiche wolde be made of  
24 drye woode, and also the settinge on of his share help-  
eth well, and is a connyng poynte of husbandry, and  
mendeth and payreth moch plowyng: but it is so narowe

<sup>1</sup> Misprinted 'blough-mal.'<sup>2</sup> *Sic*; ed. 1598 has 'worme.'

a point to know, that it is harde to make a man to vnder-  
 28 stande it by wrytynge, without he were at the operation  
 therof, to teache the practyue : for it muste leane moche [Fol. 4.]  
 in-to the forowe, and the poynt may not stande to moch  
 vp nor downe, nor to moche in-to the lande, nor into  
 32 the forowe. Howe-be-it, the settinge of the culture Setting of  
the coulter.  
 helpeth moche. Somme plowes haue a bende of yron  
 tryanglewise, sette there as the plough-eare shulde be,  
 that hath thre nyckes on the farther syde. And yf he  
 36 wyll haue his plough to go a narowe forowe, as a sede- Seed-  
furrow.  
 forowe shulde be, than he setteth his fote-teame in the  
 nycke nexte to the ploughe-beame; and yf he wyll go Mean  
furrow.  
 a meane bredth, he setteth it in the myddell nycke,  
 40 that is beste for sturryinge; and if he wolde go a brode Broad  
furrow.  
 forowe, he setteth it in the vttermoste nycke, that is beste  
 for falowyng: The whyche is a good waye to kepe the  
 bredthe, and soone tempered, but it serueth not the  
 44 depenese. And some men haue in stede of the plough-  
 fote, a piece of yron set vpryghte in the farther erde  
 of the ploughe-beame, and they calle it a coke, made 'A coke.'  
 with ii. or thre nyckes, and that serueth for depenes.  
 48 The plowes that goo with wheles, haue a streyghte Wheel-  
ploughs.  
 beame, and maye be tempred in the yron, as the other be,  
 for the bredth; but their most speciall temper is at the  
 bolster, where-as the plough-beame lyeth, and that  
 52 serueth both for depnes and for bredth. And they be  
 good on euen grounde that lyeth lyghte, but me semeth [Fol. 46.]  
 they be farre more costly than the other plowes. And  
 thoughe these plowes be well tempred for one maner  
 56 grounde, that tempre wyll not serue in an other maner  
 of grounde; but it muste reste in the dyscretion of the  
 housbande, to knowe whanne it gothe well.

## 5. ¶ The necessary thynges that belonge to a ploughe, carte, and wayne.

Bows, yokes,  
&c.

The wain.

[Fol. 5.]

Iron-bound  
wheels.Axle-tree,  
linch-pins,  
and axle-  
pins.

The cart.

Cart-  
ladders.Axe,  
hatchet, &c.

Bvt or he begyn to plowe, he muste haue his ploughe and his ploughe-yren, his oxen or horses, and the geare that belongeth to them; that is to say, bowes, yokes, 4 landes, stylkynges, wrethyng-temes. And or he shall lode his corne, he muste haue a wayne, a copyoke, a payre of sleues, a wayne-rope, and a pykforke. This wayne is made of dyuers peces, that wyll haue a greate 8 reparation, that is to saye, the wheles, and those be made of nathes, spokes, fellyes, and dowles, and they muste be well fettred with wood or yren. And if they be yren bounden, they are moche the better, and thoughe they 12 be the derer at the fyrst, yet at lengthe they be better cheape; for a payre of wheles yren bounde wyl weare vii. or viii. payre of other wheles, and they go rounde and lyght after oxen or horses to draw. Howbeit on marreis 16 ground and soft ground the other wheles be better, bycause they be broder on the soule, and will not go so depe. They must haue an axiltre, clout with .viii. waincloutes of yren, ii. lyn-pinnes of yren in the axiltre- 20 endes, ii. axil-pynnes of yren or els of tough harde wodde. The bodye of the wayne of oke, the staues, the nether rathes, the ouer rathes, the crosse somer, the keys and pikstaues. And if he go with a hors-ploughe, than 24 muste he haue his horses or mares, or both his hombers or collers, holmes whyted, tresses, swyngletrees, and togwith. Alsoo a carte made of asshe, bycause it is lyghte, and lyke stuffe to it as is to a wayne, and also a cart-sadel, 28 bakbandes, and belybandes, and a carte-ladder behinde, whan he shall carye eyther corne or kyddes, or suche other. And in many countreys theyr waynes haue carte-ladders bothe behynde and before. Also an husbande 32 muste haue an axe, a hatchet, a hedgyngbyll, a pyn-awgur,

a rest-awgur, a flayle, a spade, and a shouell. And howe-  
 be-it that I gyue theym these names, as is most comonly  
 vsed in my contrey, I knowe they haue other names in [Fol. 5<sup>3</sup>.]  
 36 other contreyes. But hereby a manne maye perceyue  
 many thynges that belonge to husbandry, to theyr greate Expense of  
 costes and charges, for the mayntenance and vpholding husbandry.  
 of the same. And many moo thynges are belongynge to  
 40 husbandes than these, as ye shall well perceyue, er I  
 haue made an ende of this treatyse. And if a yonge  
 husbande shulde bye all these thynges, it wolde be  
 costely for hym: wherfore it is necessarye for hym to It is better to  
 44 lerne to make his yokes, oxe-bowes, stooles, and all make than  
 maner of plough-geare. buy.

6. ¶ Whether is better, a plough of horses or a plough of  
 oxen.

It is to be knowen, whether is better, a plough of Ox-plough  
 horses, or a plough of oxen, and therin me semeth and horse-  
 oughte to be made a distinction. For in some places an plough.  
 4 oxe-ploughe is better than a horse-plough, and in somme  
 places a horse-ploughe is better: that is to say, in euery  
 place where-as the husband hath seuerall pastures to put  
 his oxen in whan they come fro theyr warke, there the oxe-  
 8 ploughe is better. For an oxe maye nat endure his The ox.  
 warke, to labour all daye, and than to be put to the [Fol. 6.]  
 commons, or before the herdman, and to be set in a folde  
 all nyghte without meate, and go to his labour in  
 12 the mornyng. But and he be put in a good pasture all  
 nyghte, he wyll labour moche of all the daye dayely.

And oxen wyl plowe in tough cley, and vpon hylly  
 grounde, where-as horses wyll stande st[i]ll. And where-  
 16 as is noo seuerall pastures, there the horse-plowe is better, The horse.  
 for the horses may be teddered or tyed vpon leys, balkes,  
 or hadeş, where as oxen maye not be kept: and it is not  
 vsed to tedder them, but in fewe places.

Oxen are  
cheap,

[Fol. 6b.]

and they can  
be eaten.

- 20 And horses wyl goo faster than oxen on euen grounde  
or lyght grounde, & be quicker for cariage: but they be  
ferre more costly to kepe in winter, for they must haue both  
hey and corne to eate, and strawe for lytter; they must  
24 be well shodde on all foure fete, and the gere that they  
shal drawe with is more costely than for the oxen, and  
shorter whyle it wyll last. And oxen wyll eate but straw,  
and a lyttell hey, the whiche is not halfe the coste that  
28 horsis must haue, and they haue no shoes, as horses haue.  
And if any sorance come to the horse, or [he] waxe olde,  
broysed, or blynde, than he is lyttell worthe. And if any  
sorance come to an ox, [and he] waxe olde, broysed, or  
32 blinde, for ii.s. he maye be fedde, and thanne he is mannes  
meate, and as good or better than euer he was. And the  
horse, whan he dyethe, is but caryen. And therfore me  
semeth, all thynges consydered, the ploughe of oxen is  
36 moche more profytable than the ploughe of horses.

7. ¶ The dyligence and attendaunce that a husbände shulde  
gyue to his warke, in maner of an other prologue, and  
the speciall grounde of all this treatyse.

Take pains,  
keep mea-  
sure, and be  
rich.

[Fol. 7.]

- Thou husbände, that intendeste to gette thy lyuyng  
by husbandry, take hede to the sayenge of the wyse  
phylosopher, the which sayth, *Adhibe curam, tene mensuram,*  
4 *et eris diues.* That is to saye, Take hede to thy charge,  
kepe measure, and thou shalt be ryche. And nowe to  
speke of the fyrste artycle of these .iii. s[cilicet] *Adhibe*  
*curam.* He that wyll take vpon hym to do any thinge,  
8 and be slouthefull, recheles, and not diligent to execute  
and to performe that thyng that he taketh vpon hym,  
he shall neuer thryue by his occupation. And to the  
same entente saythe our lorde in his gospell, by a parable.  
12 *Nemo mittens manum suam ad aratrum respiciens retro, aptus*

*est regno dei.* The spirytual constructyon of this texte, I Luke ix. 62.  
 remytte to the doctours of dyuynitie, and to the greate  
 clarkes; but to reduce and brynge the same texte to my  
 16 purpose, I take it thus. There is noo man, puttyng his No man,  
putting his  
hand to the  
plough, &c.  
 hande to the plough, loking backwarde, is worthy to  
 haue that thyng that he oughte to haue. For if he  
 goo to the ploughe, and loke backwarde, he seeth not  
 20 whether the plough go in rydge or rayne, make a balke,  
 or go ouerthwarte. And if it do so, there wyll be lyttell  
 corne. And so if a man attende not his husbandrye, but Be not idle.  
 goo to sporte or playe, tauerne or ale-house, or slepyng  
 24 at home, and suche other ydle warkes, he is not than  
 worthy to haue any corne. And therfore, *Fac quod venisti*, Do what you  
came to do.  
 Do that thou comest fore, and thou shalte fynde that thou  
 sekest fore, &c.

### 8. ¶ Howe a man shulde plowe all maner of landes all tymes of the yere.

Nowe these plowes be made and tempered, it is to Times of the  
year.  
 be knowen howe a man shoulde plowe all tymes of  
 the yere. In the begynnyng of the yere, after the  
 4 feast of the Epiphany, it is tyme for a husbände to [Fol. 7b.]  
 go to the ploughe. And if thou haue any leys, to Plough leas  
early.  
 falowe or to sowe otes vpon, fyrste plowe them, that  
 the grasse and the mosse may rotte, and plowe them  
 8 a depe square forowe. And in all maner of plowyng,  
 se that thy eye, thy hande, and thy fote do agree,  
 and be alwaye redy one to serue a-nother, and to turne  
 vp moche molde, and to lay it flat, that it rere not Lay the  
mould flat.  
 12 on edge. For if it rere on edge, the grasse and mosse  
 wyll not rotte. And if thou sowe it with winter-corne,  
 as whete or ry, as moche corne as toucheth the mosse  
 wyll be drowned, the mosse dothe kepe such wete in  
 16 it self. And in some countreys, if a man plowe depe,

9. *Of peas and beans.*Beating  
land with  
mattocks.

he shall passe the good grounde, and haue but lyttel corne: but that countrey is not for men to kepe husbandry vppon, but for to rere and brede catell or shepe, for  
 20 elles they muste go beate theyr landes with mattockes, as they do in many places of Cornewayle, and in som places of Deuonshyre.

## 9. ¶ To plowe for pease and beanes.

Peas and  
beans.

[Fol. 8.]

Plough a  
square fur-  
row.

Howe to plowe for pees and beanes, were necessarye to knowe. Fyrst thou muste remember, whiche is mooste cley-grounde, and that plowe fyrste, and lette  
 4 it lye a good space, er thou sowe it: bycause the froste, the rayne, the wynde, and the sonne may cause it to breake smalle, to make moche molde, and to rygge it. And to plow a square forowe, the bredthe  
 8 and the depenes all one, and to laye it close to his felow. For the more forowes, the more corne, for a generall rule of all maner of cornes. And that may be proued at the comynge vp of all maner of corne,  
 12 to stande at the landes ende and loke toward the other ende; And than may ye se, howe the corne groweth.

## 10. ¶ Howe to sowe bothe pease and beanes.

Sowing of  
peas and  
beans.

Thou shalt sowe thy peas vpon the cley-grounde, and thy beanes vpon the barley-grounde: for they wolde haue ranker grounde than pease. How-be-it  
 4 some husbandes holde opynion, that bigge and styffe grounde, as cley, wolde be sowen with bigge stuffe, as beanes; but me thynke the contrary. For if a dry sommer come, his beanes wil be shorte. And if the  
 8 grounde be good, putte the more beanes to the pease, and the better shall they yelde, whan they be thressed.

And if it be very ranke grounde, as is moche at euery [Fol. 86.]  
towne-syde, where catel doth resort, plowe not that  
12 lande, tyll ye wyll sowe it; for if ye do, there wyll  
come vppe kedlokes and other wedes. And than sowe In rank  
ground sow  
beans.  
it with beanes; for if ye sowe pees, the kedlokes wyll  
hurte them; and whan ye se seasonable time, sow  
16 both pees and beanes, so that they be sowed in the  
begynnyng of Marche. Howe shall ye knowe season-  
able tyme? go vppon the lande, that is plowed, and if it  
synge or crye, or make any noyse vnder thy fete, than If the land  
sing, it is too  
wet to sow.  
20 it is to wete to sowe: and if it make no noyse, and  
wyll beare thy horses, thanne sowe in the name of god.  
But howe to sowe? Put thy pees in-to thy hopper, and How to sow  
peas.  
take a brode thonge, of ledder, or of garthe-webbe of  
24 an elle longe, and fasten it to bothe endes of the  
hopper, and put it ouer thy heed, lyke a leysshe; and  
stande in the myddes of the lande, where the sacke  
lyethe, the whiche is mooste conueniente for the fyllynge  
28 of thy hopper, and set thy lefte foote before, and take  
an handefull of pees: and whan thou takeste vp thy  
ryghte foote, than caste thy pees fro the all abroad; and  
whan thy lefte fote ryseth, take an other handefull, and  
32 whan the ryght fote ryseth, than cast them fro the.  
And so at euery ii. paces, thou shalte sowe an hand- [Fol. 9.]  
ful of pees: and so se that the fote and the hande  
agree, and than ye shal sowe euen. And in your Cast them  
wide.  
36 castynge, ye muste open as well your fyngers as your hande,  
and the hyer and farther that ye caste your corne, the  
better shall it sprede, excepte it be a greatte wynde.  
And if the lande be verye good, and wyll breke small  
40 in the plowynge, it is better to sowe after the ploughe  
thanne tarye any lenger.

11. ¶ *Sede of discretion.*Seed of Dis-  
cretion.Borrow dis-  
cretion, if  
you have it  
not.

[Fol. 9b.]

Temporal  
things, when  
divided,  
wane.Spiritual  
things, when  
divided,  
wax.

Matt. x. 8.

There is a sede, that is called *Discretion*, and if a husband haue of that sede, and myngle it amonge his other cornes, they wyll growe moche the better; 4 for that sede wyll tell hym, how many castes of corne euery lande ought to haue. And a yonge husbnde, and may fortune some olde husbnde, hath not sufficyente of that sede: and he that lackethe, let hym borowe 8 of his neyghbours that haue. And his neyghbours be vnkynde, if they wyll not lende this yonge housbnde parte of this sede. For this sede of *Discretion* hath a wonders property: for the more that it is taken 12 of or lente, the more it is. And therfore me semeth, it shoulde be more spyrituall than temporall, wherin is a greate dyuersitie. For a temporall thyng, the more it is deuyded, the lesse it is: and a spirytuall 16 thyng, the more it is deuided, the more it is. *Verbi gratia*. For ensauple, I put case a wyfe brynge a lofe of breade to the churche, to make holy breade of; whan it is cut in many smal peces, and holy 20 breade made therof, there may be so many men, women, and children in the churche, that by that tyme the priest hath delte to euery one of them a lyttell pece, there shall neuer a crume be lefte in the hamper. And a 24 spirituall thyng as a *Pater-noster*, or a prayer, that any man can say, let hym teache it to .xx., a .C., or to a .M., yet is the prayer neuer the lesse, but moche more. And so this sede of *Discrecion* is but wisdom and reason: and 28 he that hath wysedome, reason, and discretion may teche it, and enforme other men as he is bounde to do. Wherein he shall haue thanke of god: and he doth but as god hath commaunded hym in his gospell, *Quod gratis accepistis,* 32 *gratis date*: That thyng that ye toke frely, gyue it frely again, and yet shall ye haue neuer the lesse.

## 12. ¶ Howe all maner corne shoulde be sowen.

Bvt yet me thynkethe it is necessarye to declare, howe [Fol. 10.]  
all maner of corne shuld be sowen, and howe moch  
vpon an acre most comonly, and fyrste of pease and  
4 beanes. An acre of grounde, by the statute, that is to say <sup>An acre of</sup>  
xvi. fote and a half to the perche or pole, foure perches <sup>ground.</sup>  
to an acre in bredth, and fortye perches to an acre in  
lengthe, may be metelye well sowen with two London <sup>London</sup>  
8 busshelles of pease, the whyche is but two strykes in <sup>bushels.</sup>  
other places. And if there be the .iiii. parte beanes, than  
wylle it haue halfe a London bushelle more: and yf it be  
halfe beanes, it wyll haue thre London bushels: and if it  
12 be all beanes, it wyll haue foure London busshelles fullye,  
and that is half a quarter; bycause the beanes be gret, and  
grow vp streight, & do not sprede and go abroad as  
pease do. An acre of good beanes is worth an acre & a <sup>Beans worth</sup>  
16 half of good pees, bycause there wylle be more busshelles. <sup>more than</sup>  
And the beste propertie that belongeth to a good <sup>peas.</sup>  
husband is, to sowe all maner of corne thycke ynough,  
and specially beanes and barley. For commonly they be  
20 sowen vpon ranke ground, and good grounde wylle haue  
the burthen of corne or of wede. And as moche  
plowyng and harowyng hath an acre of grounde, and  
sowe thervpon but oone busshelle, as yf he sowed .iiii. [Fol. 10b.]  
24 busshelles. And vndoutedly .i. busshell may not gyue so  
moche corne agayne, as the .iiii. busshels, though the .iii.  
bushels, that he sowed more, be alowed and set aparte.  
And i. busshel and an halfe of white or grene pees, wyll <sup>White,</sup>  
28 sowe as moche grounde, as two busshels of gray pees: <sup>green, and</sup>  
<sup>grey peas.</sup>  
and that is bycause they be so smal, and the husband  
nedeth not to take so great an handful. In some  
countrys they begyn to sowe pees soone after Christ-  
32 masse: and in some places they sowe bothe pees and  
beanes vnder forowe: and those of reson must be sowen

13. *How to sow barley.*

Feb. 2.

betyme. But moste generally, to begyn sone after Candel-  
 masse is good season, so that they be sowen ere the  
 36 begynnyng of Marche, or sone vpon. And specially let  
 them be sowen in the olde of the mone. For thopinion of  
 olde husbandes is, that they shoulde the better codde,  
 and the sooner be rype. But I speke not of hasty pees,  
 40 for they be sowen before Christmasse, &c.

## 13. ¶ To sowe barley.

Barley.

[Fol. 11.]

Sow five  
bushels to  
the acre.

Every good housbande hath his barleye-falowe well  
 dounced, and lyenge rygged all the depe and colde of  
 wynter; the whiche ryggyng maketh the lande to be  
 4 drye, and the dongynge maketh it to be melowe and  
 ranke. And if a drye season come before Candelmasse,  
 or sone after, it wolde be caste downe and waterforowed  
 bytwene the landes, that the wete rest not in the raine:  
 8 and in the begynnyng of Marche, rydge it vppe agayne,  
 and to sowe in euery acre fyue London bushelles, or  
 foure at the leaste. And some yeres it maye so fortune,  
 that there cometh no seasonable wether before Marche,  
 12 to plowe his barley-erthe. And as soone as he hath  
 sowen his pees and beanes, than let hym caste his barley-  
 érthe, and shortly after rygge it agayne: soo that it be  
 sowen before Apryll. And if the yere-tyme be paste,  
 16 than sowe it vpon the castynge.

Sprot-bar-  
ley.

Long-ear.

¶ It is to be knowen that there be thre maner of barleys,  
 that is to say, sprot-barleye, longe-eare, and beare-barley,  
 that some menne call bigge. Sprot-barley hath a flat  
 20 eare most comonly, thre quarters of an inche brode,  
 and thre inches long, and the cornes be very great  
 and white, and it is the best barley. Long-eare hath  
 a flatte eare, halfe an inche brode, and foure inches  
 24 and more of length: but the corne is not so greate  
 nor soo whyte, and sooner it wyll turne and growe

to otes. Bere-barleye or bygge wolde be sown vppon Bear-barley.  
 lyghte and drye grounde, and hathe an eare thre ynches of [Fol. 116.]  
 28 lengthe or more, sette foure-square, lyke pecke-whete,  
 small cornes, and lyttel floure, and that is the worste  
 barley, and foure London bushels are suffycient for an  
 acre. And in some countreyes, they do not sowe theyr  
 32 barley tyll Maye, and that is mooste commonly vpon  
 grauel or sandy grounde. But that barley generally is  
 neuer soo good as that that is sown in Marche. For if it Sow in  
 be verye drie wether after it be sown, that corne that March.  
 36 lyeth aboue, lyeth drie, and hath noo moysture, and that  
 that lyeth vnderne the, commeth vp: and whan rayne  
 cometh, than sprutteth that that lyeth aboue, and often-  
 tymes it is grene whan the other is rype: and whan it is  
 40 thresshen, there is moche lyghte corne, &c.

14.  To sowe otes.

And in Marche is tyme to sowe otes, and specially vpon Oats.  
 lyght grounde & drie, howe-be-it they wylle grow on  
 weter grounde than any corne els: for wete grounde  
 4 is good for no maner of corne; and thre London bushels  
 wyl sowe an acre.

And it is to be knowen, that there be .iiii. maner of otes, [Fol. 12.]  
 that is to saye, redde otes, blacke otes, and roughe otes. Red oats.  
 8 Red otes are the beste otes, and whan they be thresshed,  
 they be yelowe in the busshell, and verye good to make  
 otemele of. Blacke otes are as great as they be, but they Black oats.  
 haue not so moche floure in them, for they haue a thycker  
 12 huske, and also they be not so good to make otemele.  
 The roughe otes be the worste, and it quiteth not the Rough oats.  
 coste to sowe them: they be very lyghte, and haue longe  
 tayles, wherby they wyll hange eche one to other. All  
 16 these maner of otes weare the grounde very sore, and

Observe  
how thick to  
sow.

maketh it to beare quyche. A yonge housbande ought to take hede, howe thycke he sowethe all maner of corne, two or three yeres : and to se, howe it cometh vp, and  
20 whether it be thycke ynoughe or not : and if it be thynne, sowe thycker the nexte yere : and if it be well, holde his hande there other yeres : and if it be to thynne, let hym remember hym selfe, whether it be for the vnseason-  
24 ablenes of the wether, or for thyn sowynge. And so his wysedome and discretion muste discerne it.

### 15. ¶ To harowe all maner of cornes.

[Fol. 12<sup>b</sup>.]

Harrowing.

The ox-har-  
row.  
Harrow-  
bulls.

The horse-  
harrow.

'The ox is  
never woe,  
Till heto the  
harrow go.'

Nowe these landes be plowed, and the corne sown, it is conuenient, that they be well harowed ; or els crowes, doues, and other byrdes wyll eate and beare awaye the  
4 cornes. It is vsed in many countreys, the husbandes to haue an ox-harowe, the whiche is made of sixe smal peces of timbre, called harowe-bulles, made eyther of asshe or oke ; they be two yardes longe, and as moche as  
8 the small of a mannes legge, and haue shotes<sup>1</sup> of wode put through theym lyke lathes, and in euery bull are syxe sharpe peces of yren called harowe-tyndes, set some-what a-slope forwarde, and the formes[t] slote<sup>2</sup> must be bygger  
12 than the other, bycause the fote-teame shall be fastened to the same with a shakyll, or a withe to drawe by. This harowe is good to breake the greatte clottes, and to make moche molde, and than the horse-harowes to come after,  
16 to make the clottes smaller, and to laye the grounde euen. It is a greate labour and payne to the oxen, to goo to harowe : for they were better to goo to the plowe two dayes, thanne to harowe one daye. It is an olde saying,  
20 'The ox is neuer wo, tyll he to the harowe goo.' And it is bycause it goeth by twytches, and not alwaye after one draughte. The horse-harowe is made of fyue

[Fol. 13.]

<sup>1</sup> 'slots'?

<sup>2</sup> Misprinted 'flote.'

bulles, and passe not an elne of lengthe, and not soo  
 24 moche as the other, but they be lyke sloted and tinded.  
 And whax the corne is well couered, than it is harowed  
 ynough. There be horse-harowes, that have tyndes of  
 wodde: and those be vsed moche about Ryppon, and  
 28 suche other places, where be many bulder-stones. For Boulder-  
stones.  
 these stones wold weare the yren to soone, and those  
 tyndes be mooste commonly made of the grounde ende of Tines of the  
harrow  
made of ash  
 a yonge asshe, and they be more thanne a fote longe in  
 32 the begynnyng, and stande as moche aboue the harowe  
 as benethe.

And as they weare, or breake, they dryue them downe  
 lower; and they wolde be made longe before, ere they be  
 36 occupied, that they maye be drye; for than they shall  
 endure and last moche better, and stycke the faster.  
 The horses that shall drawe these harowes, muste be well Horses for  
harrows.  
 kepte and shodde, or elles they wyll soone be tyred, and  
 40 sore beate, that they may not drawe. They must haue  
 hombers or collers, holmes withed about theyr neckes,  
 tresses to drawe by, and a swyngletre to holde the tresses Swingle-  
tree.  
 abroad, and a togethwith to be bytwene the swyngletre and  
 44 the harowe. And if the barleye-grounde wyll not breake  
 with harrowes, but be clotty, it wolde be beaten with  
 malles, and not streyght downe; for than they beate the [Fol. 13b.]  
 corne in-to the erthe. And if they beate the clot on  
 48 the syde, it wyll the better breake. And the clot wyll lye  
 lyghte, that the corne maye lyghtely come vp. And they  
 vse to role theyr barleye-grounde after a shoure of rayne, Rolling the  
ground.  
 to make the grounde euen to mowe, &c.

16. ¶ *To falowe.*

Nowe these housbandes haue sowedn theyr pees, beanes,  
 barley, and otes, and harowed them, it is the beste tyme,  
 to falowe, in the later ende of Marche and Apryll, for Fallow in  
April.  
 4 whete, rye, and barley. And lette the husbande do the

Plough  
broad and  
deep.

- beste he can, to plowe a brode forowe and a depe,  
soo that he turne it cleane, and lay it flat, that it rere  
not on the edge: the whiche shall destroy all the thistils  
8 and wedes. For the deper and the broder that he gothe,  
the more newe molde, and the greater clottes shall he  
haue, and the greater clottes, the better wheate. For  
the clottes kepe the wheate warme all wynter, and at  
12 Marche they wyll melte and breake, and fal in manye  
small peces, the whiche is a newe dongynge, and re-  
fresshyng of the corne. And also there shall but lyttell  
weddes growe vpon the falowed, that are so falowed. For  
16 the plough goth vnderne the rootes of all maner of  
weddes, and tourneth the roote vpwarde, that it maye not  
growe. And yf the lande be falowed in wynter tyme, it is  
farre the worse, for three principall causes. One is, all the  
rayne that commeth, shal washe the lande, and dryue  
awaye the dounge and the good moulde, that the lande  
shall be moche the worse. An other cause is, the rayne  
shall beate the lande so flat, and bake it so hard to-gyther,  
24 that if a drye Maye come, it wyll be to harde to stere in  
the moneth of June. And the thyrde cause is, the wieses  
shall take suche roote, er sterynge-tyme comme, that they  
wylle not be cleane tourned vnderne the, the whiche shal  
28 be great hurte to the corne, whan it shall be sown, and  
specially in the weding-tyme of the same; and for any  
other thyng, make a depe holowe forowe in the rydge of  
the lande, and loke wel, thou rest-balke it nat; for if  
32 thou do, there wyll be many thystels: and than thou  
shalte not make a cleane rydge at the fyrste sterynge,  
and therefore it muste nedes be depe plowed, or elles  
thou shalt nat tourne the wieses cleane.

[Fol. 14,  
misprinted  
16.]

Never fallow  
in winter;  
else

(1) rain will  
wash the  
land;

(2) rain will  
beat it flat;

(3) the weeds  
will take  
deep root.

Do not rest-  
balk.

## 17. ¶ To cary out donge or mucke and to sprede it. [Fol. 14b.]

And in the later ende of Apryll, and the begynnynge of  
 Maye, is tyme to cary out his dounge or mucke, and  
 to lay it vppon his barley-grounde. And where he hath  
 4 barley this yere, sowe it with whete or rye the next  
 tyme it is falowed, and so shal he mucke all his landes  
 ouer at euerye seconde falowe. But that husbände that  
 can fynd the meanes to cary oute his donge, and to laye  
 8 it vpon his lande after it be ones sturred: it is moche  
 better than to laye it vppon his falowe, for dyuer causes.  
 One is, if it be layde vpon his fallowe, all that fallethe  
 in the holowe rygge shall do lyttell good; for whan  
 12 it is rygged agayne, it lyeth soo depe in the erthe, that  
 it wyll not be plowed vp agayne, excepte that whan he  
 hath sprede it, he wyll with a shouell, or a spade, caste  
 out all that is fallen in the rygge. And if it be layde  
 16 vpon the sturrynge, at euery plowynge it shall medle  
 the donge and the erthe togyder, the whiche shall  
 cause the corne moche better to growe and encrease.  
 And in somme places, they lode not theyr donge,  
 20 tyll harvest be done, & that is vsed in the farther  
 syde of Darbyshyre, called Scaresdale, Halomshyre, [Fol. 15.]  
 and so northewarde toward Yorke and Ryppon: and  
 that I calle better thanne vppon the falowe, and specyally  
 24 for barley: but vppon the fyrste sturrynge, is beste  
 for wheate and rye, and that his dunge be layde vpon  
 smal hepes nygh together, and to sprede it euenly, and  
 to leue no dounge there-as the mucke-hepe stode, for  
 28 the moystnes of the dounge shall cause the grounde to  
 be ranke ynoughe. And if it be medled with erthe,  
 as sholynges and suche other, it wyll laste the longer,  
 and better for barley than for whete or rye, bycause of  
 32 wedes. Horse-donge is the worste donge that is. The  
 donge of all maner catell, that chewe theyr cudde,  
 is verye good. And the dounge of douues is best,  
 but it must be layde vppon the grounde verye thynne.

Carry out  
dung.Lay dung on  
the land  
after the  
first stirring,and soon  
after stir-  
ring.Spread it  
euenly.Mix it with  
earth.

Doves' dung.

## 18. ¶ To set out the shepe-folde.

The sheep-  
fold.

[Fol 15<sup>b</sup>.]

See if the  
sheep have  
maggots.

Folding  
sheep is not  
a good plan.

Drive stakes  
in the field.

The sheep  
will rub  
against  
them.

[Fol. 16,  
*misprinted*  
14.]

Also it is tyme to set out the shepefolde in May,  
and to sette it vppon the rye-grounde, if he haue any,  
and to flyte it euery mornynge or nyght: and in the  
4 mornynge, whan he cometh to his folde, let not his  
shepe out anone, but reyse theym vp, and let them  
stande styлле good season, that they may donge and  
pysse. And go amonge them to se whether any of  
8 them haue any mathes, or be scabbed: and se them  
thre or foure tymes on the oone syde, and as ofte on  
the other syde. And whan the kelles begonne besyde  
the grounde, than lette theym out of the folde, and  
12 dryue theym to the soundest place of the felde. But  
he that hath a falowe felde, seueral to hym-selfe, let  
hym occupie no folde. For foldynge of shepe maketh  
them scabbed, and bredeth mathes; and whanne a  
16 storme of yll wether commeth in the night, they can  
nat flee nor go awaye, and that appeyareth them sore  
of their flesshe. But lette that man that hath such a  
seueral falowe-felde, driue twentie, thyrty, or forty stakes,  
20 accordynge to the nombre of his shepe, vpon his falowe,  
where he wolde sette his folde, and specially in the  
farthest parte of the fyelde frome thense as they comme  
in, for the goynge vppon dothe moche good. And  
24 lette the sheparde brynge his shepe to the stakes, and  
the sheepe wyllle rubbe them on the stakes. And lette  
the sheparde goo aboute them, tyll they be sette, and  
thus serue theym two or three nyghtes, and they wyll  
28 folowe those stakes, as he flytteth them, and syt by  
them. And if any yll wether come, they will ryse vp,  
and go to the hedge. And this maner of foldynge  
shall brede noo mathes nor scabbe, nor appeyre theym  
32 of theyr flesshe, and shall be a greate sauegarde to the  
shepe for rottynge: and in the mornynge put them out  
of theyr pasture, and thou shalte not nede to bye any

hurdels nor shepe-flekes ; but howe ye shall salue them Use no  
hurdles.  
 36 or dresse them, ye shall vnderstande in the chaypter of  
 shepe after.

### 19. ¶ To cary wodde and other necessaryes.

And in May, whan thou hast falowed thy grounde, and In May  
carry wood.  
 set oute thy shepefolde, and caryed oute thy dounge or  
 mucke, if thou haue any wodde, cole, or tymbre to  
 4 cary, or suche other busynes, that muste nedes be doone,  
 with thy charte or wayne, than is it tyme to do it. For  
 than the waye is lyke to be fayre and drye, and the days The days are  
then long.  
 longe, and that tyme the husbände hath leeste to doo in  
 8 husbandry. Perauenture I set one thyng to be done at  
 one tyme of the yere, and if the husbände shulde do it,  
 it shulde be a greater losse to hym in an other thyng.  
 Wherefore it is moste conuenient to do that thyng fyrst,  
 12 that is moste profytable to hym, and as soone as he [Fol. 166.]  
 can, do the other labour.

### 20. ¶ To knowe dyuers maner of wedes.

In the later ende of Maye, and the begynnyng of In June  
weed the  
corn.  
 June, is tyme to wede thy corne. There be diuers maner  
 of wedes, as thistyls, kedlokes, dockes, cocledrake,  
 4 darnolde, gouldes, haudoddess, dogfenell, mathes, ter,  
 and dyuers other small wedes. But these be they that  
 greue mooste: The thistyll is an yll wede, roughe and Thistles.  
 sharpe to handell, and freteth away the cornes nygh it,  
 8 and causeth the sherers or reapers not to shere cleane.  
 Kedlokes hath a leafe lyke rapes, and beareth a yelow Charlock.  
 floure, and is an yll wede, and groweth in al maner corne,  
 and hath small coddess, and groweth lyke mustard sede.  
 12 Dockes have a brode lefe, and diuers high spyres, and Docks.  
 very small sede in the toppe. Cockle hath a longe small Cockle.  
 lefe, and wyl beare fyue or vi. floures of purple colour, as

- brode as a grote, and the sede is rounde and blacke, and  
 16 maye well be suffred in a breade-corne, but not in sede,  
 ' Drake.' for therin is moche floure. Drake is lyke vnto rye, till it  
 [Fol. 17.] begynne to sede, and it hath many sedes lyke fenell-sedes,  
 and hangeth downewarde, and it maye wel be suffred in  
 20 breade, for there is moche floure in the sede: and it is an  
 Darnel. opinion that it commeth of rye, &c. Darnolde groweth  
 vp streyght lyke an hye grasse, and hath longe sedes on  
 eyther syde the sterte, and there is moche floure in that  
 24 sede, and growethe moche amonge barley: and it is  
 Golds. sayde, that it cometh of small barley. Golds hath a shorte  
 iagged lefe, and groweth halfe a yarde hygh, and hath a  
 yelowe floure, as brode as a grote, and is an yll wede, and  
 Hawdod. 28 groweth commonlye in barleye and pees. Hawdod hath  
 a blewe floure, and a fewe lyttell leues, and hath .v. or syxe  
 braunches, floured in the toppe: and groweth comonly in  
 Dog-fennel. rye vpon leane grounde, and dothe lyttel hurte. Dogge-  
 32 fenell and mathes is bothe one, and in the comynge vp  
 is lyke fenell and beareth many white floures, with a  
 yelowe sede: and is the worste wede that is, excepte terre,  
 and it commeth moste commonly, whan great wete com-  
 Tares. 36 meth shortly after the corne is sowen. Terre is the  
 worste wede, and it neuer dothe appere tyll the moneth  
 of June, and specyallye whanne there is great wete in  
 that mone, or a lyttell before, and groweth mooste in rye,  
 40 and it groweth lyke fytches, but it is moche smaller, and  
 [Fol. 17b.] it wyll growe as hyghe as the corne, and with the weyght  
 therof it pulleth the corne flatte to the erth, and freteth  
 the eares away; wherfore I haue seene housbandes mowe  
 44 downe the corne and it together: And also with sharp  
 hokes to repe it, as they doo pees, and made drye, and  
 than it wyll be good fodder.
- Dee-nettles. There be other wedes not spoken of, as dee-nettylles,  
 Dodder. 48 dodder, and suche other, that doo moche harme.

21. ¶ *Howe to wede corne.*

Nowe it wolde be knowen, howe these cornes shulde be <sup>How to weed.</sup> weded. The chyefe instrument to wede with is a paire of tonges made of wode, and in the farther ende it is  
 4 nycked, to holde the wed faster; and after a shoure of raine it is beste wedynge, for than they maye be pulled vp by the rotes, and than it cometh neuer agayne. And if it be drye wether, than muste ye haue a wedynge-hoke <sup>Weeding-hook.</sup>  
 8 with a socket set vpon a lyttel staffe of a yarde longe, and this hoke wolde be well steeled, and grounde sharpe bothe behynde and before. And in his other hande he hath a <sup>Forkedstick.</sup> forked stycke a yarde longe, and with his forked stycke  
 12 he putteth the wede from hym, and he putteth the hoke [Fol. 18.] beyond the rote of the wede, and pulleth it to hym, and cutteth the wede fast by the erthe, and with his hoke he taketh up the wede, and casteth it in the reane, and if  
 16 the reane be full of corne, it is better it stande styll, whan it is cut, and wyddre: but let hym beware, that he trede not to moche vppon the corne, and specyallye after it is shotte, and whan he cutteth the wede, that he cut <sup>Cut not the corn.</sup>  
 20 not the corne: and therefore the hoke wolde not passe an inche wyde. And whanne the wede is soo shorte, that he can not with his forked stycke put it from hym, and with the hoke pull it to hym, thanne muste he set  
 24 his hoke vppon the wede, fast by the erthe, and put it from hym, and so shall he cutte it cleane. And with these two instruments, he shall neuer stoupe to his warke. <sup>Stoop not.</sup> Dogfenell, goldes, mathes, and kedlokes are yll to wede  
 28 after this maner, they growe vppon so many braunches, harde by the erthe: and therfore they vse most to pul <sup>Pull up darnel.</sup> them vppe with theyr handes; but loke well, that they pull not vppe the corne with all; but as for terre, there  
 32 wyll noo wedynge serue.

22. *The first stirring.*

## 22. ¶ The fyrst sturrynge.

[Fol. 185.]

How to  
plough and  
load out  
dung.

Also in June is tyme to rygge vppe the falowe, the  
 whiche is called the fyrst sturrynge, and to plowe it as  
 depe as thou canste, for to tourne the rotes of the wedes  
 4 vpwarde, that the sonne and the drye wether maye kyll  
 them. And an housbande can not conuenyentelye plowe  
 his lande, and lode out his dounge bothe vppon a daye,  
 with one draughte of beastes: but he maye well lode oute  
 8 his dounge before none, and lode heye or corne at-after  
 none: or he maye plowe before none, and lode hey or  
 corne at-after none, with the same draughte, and noo  
 hurte to the cattell: bycause in lodynge of hey or corne,  
 12 the cattel is alwaye eatynge or beytynge, and soo they  
 can not doo in lodynge of dounge and plowynge.

## 23. ¶ To mowe grasse.

End of June.

July.

Mow hay  
early.

[Fol. 19.]

How to mow

Also in the later ende of June is tyme to begyn to  
 mowe, if thy medowe be well growen: but howe-so-euer  
 they be growen, in July they muste nedes mowe, for  
 4 diuers causes. One is, it is not conuenient to haue hey  
 and corne bothe in occupation at one tyme. An other is,  
 the yonger and the grener that the grasse is, the softer  
 and the sweter it wyll be, whan it is hey, but it wyll haue  
 8 the more wyddrynge; and the elder the grasse is, the  
 harder and dryer it is, and the worse for al maner of  
 cattell: for the sedes be fallen, the whiche is in maner  
 of prouander, and it is the harder to eate and chowe.  
 12 And an other cause is, if drye wether come, it wyll drye  
 and burne vpon the grounde, and waste away. Take  
 hede that thy mower mow clene and holde downe the  
 hynder hand of his sith, that he do not endent the grasse,  
 16 and to mowe his swathe cleane thorowe to that that  
 was laste mowen before, that he leaue not a mane by-  
 twene, and specyallye in the common medowe: for in

the seuerall medowe it maketh the lesse charge, and that  
 20 the moldywarpe-hilles be spredde, and the styckes cleane M e-hills.  
 pycked out of the medowe in Apryll, or in the begin-  
 nyng of Maye.

#### 24. ¶ Howe forkes and rakes shulde be made.

A Good husbande hath his forkes and rakes made Forks and  
rakes.  
 redye in the wynter before, and they wolde be gotte  
 bytwene Mighelmasse and Martylmasse, and beyked, and  
 4 sette euen, to lye vpryght in thy hande: and than they [Fol. 19b.]  
 wyll be harde styffe and drye. And whan the housbande  
 sytteth by the fyre, and hath nothyng to do, than maye  
 he make theym redye, and tothe the rakes with drye wethy-  
 8 wode, and bore the holes with his wymblye, bothe aboue Bore holes  
for the teeth  
of the rakes.  
 and vnder, and driue the tethe vpwarde faste and harde,  
 and than wedge them aboue with drye woode of oke, for  
 that is hard, and wil driue and neuer come out. And if  
 12 he get them in sappe-tyme, all the beykyng and drienge  
 that can be had shal not make them harde and styffe,  
 but they woll alwaye be plyenge: for they be moste Use hazel  
and withy.  
 comonly made of hasell and withee, and these be the  
 16 trees that blome, and specially hasell: for it begynneth  
 to blome as sone as the lefe is fallen. And if the rake  
 be made of grene woode, the heed wyll not abyde  
 vppon the stele, and the tethe wyll fall out, whan he  
 20 hath mooste nede to them, and let his warke, and lose  
 moche heye. And se that thy rake and forke lye vpryghte Use no  
green wood.  
 in thy hand, for and the one ende of thy rake, or the syde  
 of thy forke, hang downe-warde, than they be not hand-  
 24 some nor easy to worke with. Make all  
evenly.

#### 25. ¶ To tedde and make hay.

Whan thy medowes be mowed, they wolde be well [Fol. 20.]  
 tedded and layde euen vppon the ground: and if the Tedding  
hay.  
 grasse be very thicke, it wolde be shaken with handes,

Ted hay  
carefully.

4 or with a shorte pykforke. For good teddyng is the chiefe poynte to make good hey, and than shall it be wyddred all in lyke, or elles not: and whan it is wel wyddred on the ouer syde, and dry, than turne it cleane  
8 before noone, as soone as the dewe is gone: And yf thou dare truste the wether, lette it lye so all nyghte: and on the nexte daye, tourne it agayne before none, and towarde nyght make it in wyndrowes, and than in smal

Hay-cocks.

12 hey-cockes, and so to stande one nyghte at the leaste, and sweate: and on the nexte fayre day caste it abrode agayne, and tourne it ones or twyse, and than make it in greatter hey-cockes, and to stande so one nyght or  
16 more, that it maye vngiue and sweate. For and it sweate not in the hey-cockes, it wyll sweate in the mowe; and than it wyll be dustye, and not holsome for hors, beastes, nor shepe. And whan it standeth in the cockes, it is

Larger  
hay-cocks.

20 better to lode, and the more hey maye be loded at a lode, and the faster it wyll lye. Quych-hey commeth of a grasse called crofote, and groweth flatte, after the erthe, and beareth a yelow floure halfe a yarde hygh and  
24 more, and hath many knottes towarde the roote, and it is the beste hey for horses and beastes, and the sweteste, if it be well got; but it wyll haue moch more wyddrynge than other hey, for els he wyll be-pysse hym-selfe and

Quich-hay.

[Fol. 20b.]

28 waxe hote, and after dustye. And for to knowe whanne it is wyddred ynoughe, make a lyttell rope of the same, that ye thinke shulde be moste greneste, and twyne it as harde to-gether bytween your handes as ye canne, and soo

How to  
know when  
hay is dry.

Twist a  
wisp, and  
then cut it.

32 beyng harde twon, let one take a knyfe, and cut it faste by your hande; and the knottes wyll be moyste, yf it be not drye ynough. Shorte hey, and leye-hey, is good for shepe, and all maner of catell, if it be well got. A man  
36 maye speke of makynge of hey, and gettynge of corne, but god disposeth and ordreth all thyng.

## 26. ¶ Howe rye shulde be shorne.

In the later ende of July, or in the begynnyng of <sup>In July,  
shear rye.</sup> Auguste, is tyme to shere Rye, the whiche wolde be shorne cleane, and faste bounden. And in somme  
4 places they mowe it, the whiche is not soo good to the housbandes profytte, but it is the sooner done. For  
whan it is mowen, it wyll not be so fast bounden: and [Fol. 21.]  
he can not gather it soo cleane, but there wyll be moche  
8 losse, and taketh more rowme in the barne than shorne corne dothe. And also it wyll not kepe nor saue it selfe from rayne or yll wether, whan it standeth in the couer, as the shorne corne wyll do.

## 27. ¶ Howe to shere wheate.

Wheate wolde be shorne cleane, and harde bounden <sup>Shear wheat  
clean.</sup> in lyke maner; but for a generall rule, take good hede, that the sherers of all maner of whyte corne cast not  
4 vppe theyr handes hastely, for thanne all the lose corne, and the strawes, that he holdeth not fast in his hande, flieth ouer his heed, and are loste: and also it wyll pull of the eares, and specyallye of the cornes that be verye  
8 rype. In somme places they wyll shere theyr cornes <sup>Shearing  
high.</sup> hyghe, to the entente to mowe theyr stubble, eyther to thacke or to bren: if they so do, they haue greate cause to take good hede of the sherers. For if the eares of  
12 corne croke downe to the erthe, and the sherer take not good hede, and put up the eare er he cut the strawe: as many eares as be vnder his hoke or sicle fall to the erthe, and be loste; and whan they mowe [Fol. 21b.]  
16 the stubble, it is great hyndraunce to the profytte of the grounde. And in Sommersetshire, about Zelcestre and Martok, they doo shere theyr wheate very lowe, and all the wheate-strawe that they pourpose to make  
20 thacke of, they do not thresshe it, but cutte of the <sup>Near Il-  
chester and  
Martock  
they shear  
low.</sup>

Best kind of  
thatching.

eares, and bynde it in sheues, and call it rede: and  
therwith they thacke theyr houses. And if it be a  
newe house, they thacke it vnder theyr fote: the  
24 whiche is the beste and the surest thatking that can  
be of strawe, for crowes and douues shall neuer hurte it.

### 28. ¶ To mowe or shere barley and otes.

Mow barley  
and oats.

Barley and otes be moste commonly mowen, and a  
man or woman folowythe the mower with a hande-rake  
halfe a yarde longe, with .vii. or .viii. tethe, in the  
4 lyfte hande, and a syckle in the ryghte hande, and  
with the rake he gethereth as moche as wyll make a  
shefe. And thanne he taketh the barley or otes by the  
toppes, and pulleth out as moche as wil make a band,  
8 and casteth the band from him on the land, and with his  
rake and his syckle taketh vp the barley or otes, &  
layeth them vppon the bande, and so the barley lyeth  
vnbounde .iii. or .iiii. dayes, if it be fayre wether,  
[Fol. 22.] 12 and than to bynde it. And whan the barley is ledde  
away, the landes muste be raked, or els there wyll be  
moche corne loste, and if the barley or otes lye, they  
muste nedes be shorne.

Rake after-  
wards.

### 29. ¶ To repe or mowe pees and beanes.

Reap or  
mow peas  
and beans.

Pees and benes be moste commonly laste reped or  
mowen, of diuers maners, some with sickles, some  
with hokes, and some with staffe-hokes. And in some  
4 places they lay them on repes, and whan they be dry,  
they laye them to-gether on heapes, lyke hey-cockes,  
and neuer bynde them. But the beste way is, whan  
the repes be dry, to bynde them, and to set theym on  
8 the rydge of the landes three sheues to-gether; and  
loke that your sherers, repers, or mowers geld not  
your beanes, that is to saye, to cutte the beanes so hye,

Bind them  
together.

Cut beanes  
low.

that the nethermoste codde growe styll on the stalke;  
 12 and whan they be bounden, they are the more redyer  
 to lode and vnlode, to make a reke, and to take fro  
 the mowe to thresshe. And soo be not the repes.

## 30. ¶ Howe all maner of cornes shulde be tythed.

[Fol. 22b.]

Nowe that all these cornes before specyfyed be  
 shorne, mowed, reped, bounden vp, and layde vppon  
 the rydge of the lande, lette the housbande take  
 4 hede of goddes commaundemente, and let hym goo  
 to the ende of his lande, and begynne and tell .ix. How to  
tithe.  
Count 9  
sheaves, and  
cast out the  
tenth.  
 sheues, and let hym caste out the .x. shefe in the  
 name of god, and so to pervse from lande to lande,  
 8 tyll he haue trewely, tythed all his corne. And beware,  
 and take hede of the sayinge of our lorde by his  
 prophete Malachias, the whiche saythe, *Quia michi non* Malachi iii.  
8, 9.  
*dedisti decimas et primitias, id circo in fame et penuria*  
 12 *maledicti estis.* That is to saye, Bycause ye haue not  
 gyuen to me your tythes, and your fyrste-fruytes, there-  
 fore ye be cursed, and punysshed with hunger and  
 penury. And accordyng to that saynte Austyn saythe: Augustine.  
 16 *Da decimas, alioqui incidis in decimam partem angelorum*  
*qui de celo corruerunt in infernum.* That is to say, Gyue Give tithes  
truly.  
 thy tythes truely, or els thou shalt fall amonge the tenthe  
 parte of aungelles that felle from heuen in-to hell, the  
 20 whiche is an harde worde to euery man, that oughte to  
 gyue tythes, and doth not gyue them truely. But saynte [Fol. 23.]  
 Austyne saythe a comfortable worde again, to them that Augustine.  
 gyue theyr tythes truely, that is to saye: *Decimæ sunt*  
 24 *tributa egentium animarum:* Tythes are tributes or Tithes are  
tributes to  
the needy.  
 rewardes to nedye soules. And ferther he saythe: *Si*  
*decimam dederis, non solum abundantiam fructum recipies,*  
*sed etiam sanitatem corporis et animæ consequeris,* That  
 28 is to saye, If thou haue gyuen thy tythes truely, thou  
 shalte not onely receyue the profite, and the abundaunce

of goodes, but also helthe of bodye and soule shall folowe. Wolde to god, that euerye man knewe the  
 32 harde worde of our lorde by his prophete Malachias, and also the comfortable wordes of the holy saynte Austyn. For than wolde I truste verely, that tythes, shulde be truely gyuen.

### 31. ¶ Howe all maner of corne shulde be couered.

How to  
cover corn.

[Fol. 23<sup>d</sup>.]

Set ten  
sheaves to-  
gether.

For peas  
and beans  
set three  
together.

Nowe these cornes be shorne and bounden, and the  
 tithes cast out, it is tyme to couer theym, shoke theym,  
 or halfe-throne them, but couerynge is the beste waye  
 4 of all maner of whyte corne. And that is, to set foure  
 sheues on one syde, and .iiii. sheues on the other syde,  
 and two sheues aboue, of the greatteste, bounden harde  
 nyghe to the nether ende, the whiche must be set vpwarde,  
 8 and the top downewarde spredde abroad to couer all the  
 other sheues. And they wyll stand beste in wynde, and  
 saue theym-selfe beste in rayne, and they wolde be set  
 on the rydge of the lande, and the sayde sheues to leane  
 12 to-gether in the toppes, and wyde at the grounde, that  
 the winde may go through, to drye them. Pees and  
 beanes wolde be set on the rydge of the lande, thre  
 sheues together, the toppes vpwarde, and wrythen to-  
 16 gether, and wyde benethe, that they maye the better  
 wyddre.

### 32. ¶ To lode corne, and mowe it.

To load  
corn.

Make many  
mows, if it  
be wet.

Whanne all these cornes be drye and wyddred ynoughe,  
 than lode theym in-to the barne, and laye euerye corne  
 by it-selfe. And if be a wete haruest, make many mowes:  
 4 and if thou haue not housynge ynoughe, thanne it is  
 better to laye thy pees and benes without vppon a reke,  
 than other corne, and it is better vppon a scaffolde than  
 vppon the grounde: for than it muste be well hedged

8 for swyne and catel, and the grounde wyll rotte the [Fol. 24.]  
 bottom, and the scaffold saue both hedgyng and  
 rottyng: but they must be well couered bothe. And the  
 husband may set shepe or catel vnder the same scaffold *The scaffold.*  
 12 and wyll serue hym in stede of an house, if it be well  
 and surely made, &c.

33. ¶ *The second<sup>1</sup> sturryinge.*

In August, and in the begynnyng of September, is *August.*  
 tyme to make his seconde sturryinge, and most commonly *Second*  
 it is cast downe and plowed a meane forowe, not to depe *stirring.*  
 4 nor to ebbe, so he turne it clene. And if it be caste, it  
 wolde be water-forowed bytwene the landes, there-as *Water-*  
 the reane shuide be, and it wyll be the dryer, whan the *furrow the*  
 lande shall be sown. And if the landes lie high in *land.*  
 8 the ridge, & highe at the reane, & lowe in the  
 myddes of the side, that the water may not ronne easely  
 in-to the reane, as I se dayly in many places: than let  
 the husband set his plough .iiii. or .iiii. fote from the  
 12 rydge, and cast all the rydge on bothe sydes, and whan *How to*  
 the rydge is cast, set his plough there-as he began, and *ridge it up.*  
 rydge vp the remenant of the lande, and so is the land  
 bothe cast and rydged, and all at one plowyng. And this  
 16 shall cause the lande to lye rounde, whan it is sown [Fol. 24b.]  
 at the nexte tyme, and than shall it not drowne the corne.

34. ¶ *To sowe wheat and rye.*

Aboute Myghelmasse it is tyme to sowe bothe wheate *Michael-*  
 and rye. Wheate is mooste commonlye sown vnder the *mas.*  
 forowe, that is to saye, caste it vpon the falowe, and *Sow wheat*  
 4 than plowe it vnder. And in some places they sowe theyr *and rye.*  
 wheate vpon theyr pees-stubble, the whiche is neuer *Pease stub-*  
 soo good, as that that is sown vpon the falowe: and *ble.*  
 that is vsed, where they make falowe in a fylde euery

<sup>1</sup> *Misprinted fyrst.*

In Essex a  
childsows.

- 8 fourthe yere. And in Essex they vse to haue a chylde, to go in the forowe before the horses or oxen, with a bagge or a hopper full of corne: and he taketh his hande full of corne, and by lyttel and lytel casteth it in the sayde forowe. Me semeth, that chylde oughte to haue moche dyscretion.

He ought to  
have much  
discretion.

Sow 2  
London  
bushels to  
an acre.

- Howe-be-it there is moche good corne, and rye is mooste commonlye sowed aboue and harrowed, and two London busshelles of wheate and rye wyll sowe an acre. Some grounde is good for wheate, some for rye, and some is good for bothe: and vpon that ground sowe blend-corne, that is both wheate and rye, the whyche is the surest corne of growyng, and good for the husbandes houshold. And the wheate, that shall be medled with rye, muste be suche as wyll soone be ripe, and that is flaxen wheate, polerd wheate, or whyte wheate. And ye

[Fol. 25.]

Wheat and  
rye mixed.

- 20 shall vnderstande, that there be dyuers maners of wheates. Flaxen wheate hath a yelow eare, and bare without anis, and is the bryghtest wheate in the busshell, and wyll make the whyttest breed, and it wyll weare the grounde sore, and is small strawe, and wyll growe very thycke, and is but small corne. Polderde wheate hath noo anis, thycke sette in the eare, and wyll soone fall out, and is greater corne, and wyll make whyte breed. Whyte

Flaxen  
wheat.

Pollard  
wheat.

White  
wheat.

- 32 wheate is lyke polderde wheate in the busshell, but it hath anis, and the eare is foure-square, and wyll make white breed: and in Essex they call flaxen wheate whyte wheate. Red wheate hath a flat eare, an inche brode, full of anis, and is the greatteste corne, and the brodeste blades, and the greatteste strawe, and wyl make whyte breed, and is the rudeste of colour in the busshell.

Red wheat.

English  
wheat.

- 40 Englysshe wheate hath a dunne eare, fewe anis or none, and is the worste wheate, saue peeke-wheate. Peeke-wheate hath a red eare, ful of anis, thyn set, and ofte tymes it is flyntered, that is to saye, small corne wrynkeled

Peek-wheat.

[Fol. 25b.]

44 and dried, and wyll not make whyte breade, but it wyl growe vpon colde grounde.

### 35. ¶ To thresshe and wynowe corne.

This wheate and rye, that thou shalte sowe, ought to be very cleane of wede, and therfore, er thou thresshe thy corne, open thy sheues, and pyke oute all maner of  
 4 wedes, and than thresshe it, and wynowe it cleane, and so shalt thou haue good clene corne an other yere. And in some countreys, aboute London specyallye, and in Essex and Kente, they do fan theyr corne, the  
 8 whiche is a verye good gise, and a great sauegarde for shedyng of the corne. And whan thou shalte sell it, if it be well wynowed or fande, it wyll be solde the derer, and the lyghte corne wyll serue the husbande in  
 12 his house.

Carefully  
clean seed-  
corn.

In Essex and  
Kent they  
fan the corn.

### 36. ¶ To seuer pees, beanes, and fytches.

Whan thou haste thresshed thy pees, and beanes, after they be wynowed, and er thou shalte sowe or selle them, let theym be well reed with syues, and seuered in  
 4 thre partes, the great from the small, and thou shalte gette [Fol. 26.] in euerye quarter a London busshell, or there about. For the small corne lyeth in the holowe and voyde places of the greate beanes, and yet shall the greate beanes be solde  
 8 as dere, as if they were all together, or derer, as a man may proue by a famylier ensample. Let a man bye .C. hearynges,<sup>1</sup> two hearynges for a penye, and an other .C. hearynges, thre for a peny, and let hym sell these  
 12 .CC. hearinges agayne .v. heringes for .ii. d.; nowe hath he loste .iiii. d. For C. hearinges, .ii. for i. d., cost v. s., and C. hearynges, .iii. for a peny, coste .iii. s. and .iiii. d., the whiche is .viii. s. and .iiii. d.; and whan he selleth  
 16 .v. herynges for .ii. d., xx. heringes cometh but

Sift your  
peas and  
beans.

Separate  
small from  
large.

120 herrings,  
at 2 a penny,  
cost 5 shil-  
lings;

120 herrings,  
at 3 a penny,  
cost 3s. 4d.;  
or 8s. 4d. in  
all.

<sup>1</sup> Note that the symbol "C." here does *not* mean 100, but the *great hundred*, i.e. 120.

20 herrings,  
at 5 for 2*d.*,  
cost 8*d.*; 12  
times as  
much are 24  
groats, or  
8*s.*

Always buy  
by gross  
sale, and  
sell by retail.

[Fol. 26*b.*]

- to .viii. d. and there is but .xii. score heringes, and that is but .xii. grotes, and xii. grotes, and that cometh but to .viii. s. and so he hath lost .iiii. d. and it is bicause there be
- 20 not so many bargeins, for in the bienge of these .CC. heringes there be .v. score bargeins, and in the sellinge of the same there be but .xlvi. bargeyns, and so is there lost .x. hearinges, the whiche wolde haue ben .ii. bargeyns moo, and than it had ben euen and mete. And therefore he that byeth grosse sale, and retayleth, muste nedes be a wyunner. And so shalt thou be a loser, if thou sell thy pees, beanes, and fytches together: for than
- 24 thou sellest grosse sale. And if thou seuer them in thre partes, than thou doest retayle, wherby thou shalte wyinne.

### 37. ¶ Of shepe, and what tyme of the yere the rammes shulde be put to the ewes.

Sheep are  
the most  
profitable  
cattle.

Rams and  
ewes.

Sept. 14.

[Fol. 27.]

- AN housbande can not well thryue by his corne, without he haue other cattell, nor by his cattell, without corne. For els he shall be a byer, a borower, or a begger. And bycause that shepe in myne opynyon is the mooste profytablest cattell that any man can haue, therefore I pourpose to speake fyrst of shepe. Than fyrst is to be knowen, what tyme thou shalt put thy
- 4 rammes to thy ewes; and therin I make a distinction, for euery man maye not put to theyr rammes all at one tyme; for if they doo, there wyll be greate hurte and losse; for that man, that hath the best shepe-pasture for
- 8 wynter, and soone spryngynge in the begynnynge of the yere, he maye suffre his rammes to goo with his ewes all tymes of the yere, to blyssomme or ryde whan they wyll: but for the comon pasture, it is tyme to put to his
- 12 rammes at the Exaltation of the holye crosse: for than the bucke goth to the rut, and so wolde the ramme. But for the common husbande, that hath noo pasture but the common fieldes, it is tyme ynouge at the feste of

20 saynt Mychaell the archangel. And for the poore Sept. 29.  
 housbande of the Peeke, or suche other, that dwell in  
 hylly and hyghe groundes, that haue no pastures, nor  
 common fieldes, but all-onely the comon hethe, Symon  
 24 and Jude daye is good tyme for theym, and this is the Oct. 28.  
 reason why. An ewe goth with lambe .xx. wekes, and  
 shall yeane her lambe in the .xxi. weke; & if she haue  
 not conueniente newe grasse to eate, she maye not gyue  
 28 her lambe mylke: and for wante of mylke, there be  
 manye lambes perysshed and loste: and also for pouertye,  
 the dammes wyll lacke mylke, and forsake theyr lambes,  
 and soo often tymes they dye bothe in suche harde  
 32 countreys.

### 38. ¶ To make an ewe to loue her lambe.

If thy ewe haue mylke, and wyll not loue her lambe,  
 put her in a narowe place made of bordes, or of smothe  
 trowse, a yarde wyde, and put the lambe to her, and  
 4 socle it, and yf the ewe smyte the lambe with her If a ewe  
 heed, bynd her heed with a heye-rope, or a corde, to [Fol. 27b.]  
 the syde of the penne: and if she wyl not stande smite her  
 syde longe all the lambe,<sup>1</sup> than gyue her a lyttell hey, lamb, tie up  
 8 and tye a dogge by her, that she maye se hym: and her head.  
 this wyll make her to loue her lambe shortely. And  
 if thou haue a lambe deed, wherof the damme hath  
 moche mylke, fley that lambe, and tye that skynne vpon  
 12 an other lambes backe, that hath a sory damme, with  
 lyttell mylke, and put the good ewe and that lambe to- Put a dead  
 gether in the penne, and in one houre she wyll loue lamb's skin  
 that lambe; & than mayst thou take thy sory weyke on a live  
 16 ewe awaye, and put her in an other place: and by this lamb, and so  
 meanes thou mayste fortune to saue her lyfe, and the change its  
 lambes bothe. dam.

<sup>1</sup> Printed ewe, which gives no sense.

## 39. ¶ What tyme lambes shulde be wayned.

In some places they neuer seuer their lambes from theyr dammes, and that is for two causes: One is, in the beste pasture where the rammes goo alwaye with  
 4 theyr ewes, there it nedeth not, for the dammes wil waxe drye, and wayne theyr lambes theym-selfe. An other cause is, he that hath noo seuerall and sounde pasture, to put his lambes vnto whan they shoulde be  
 [Fol. 28.] 8 wayned, he muste eyther sell them, or let them sucke as longe as the dammes wyll suffre theym; and it is a common sayinge, that the lambe shall not rotte, as longe as it souketh, excepte the damme wante meate.  
 12 But he that hath seuerall and sounde pasture, it is tyme to wayne theyr lambes, whanne they be .xvi. wekes old, or .xviii. at the farthest, and the better shall the ewe take the ramme agayne. And the poore man of  
 16 the peeke countreye, and suche other places, where as they vse to mylke theyr ewes, they vse to wayne theyr lambes at xii. wekes olde, and to mylke theyr ewes fiue or syxe wekes, &c. But those lambes be neuer  
 20 soo good as the other that sucke longe, and haue meate ynoughe.

In the best pastures, lambs wean themselves.

Lambs to be weaned at 16 weeks, or 18.

In the Peak, lambs are weaned at 12 weeks.

Have a large sheep-fold;

[Fol. 285.]

another to hold 90 sheep;

and another for 40 sheep.

## 40. ¶ To drawe shepe, and seuer them in dyuers places.

Than thou grasier, that hast many shepe in thy pastures, it is conuenient for the to haue a shepefolde made with a good hedge or a pale, the whiche wyll  
 4 receyue all thy shepe easily that goo in one pasture, sette betwene two of thy pastures, in a drye place; and adioynynge to the ende of the same, make an other lyttell folde, that wyll receyue lxxxx. shepe or  
 8 moo, and bothe those foldes muste haue eyther of theym a gate in-to eyther pasture, and at the ende of that folde make an other lyttell folde, that wyll receyue .xl. shepe or mo, and betwene euery folde a

- 12 gate. And whan the shepe are in the greate folde,  
 let .xl. of them, or there about, come into the myddle  
 folde, and steke the gate. And than let the shepeherde  
 turne them, and loke them on euery syde, and if he se  
 16 or fynde any shepe, that nedeth any helpynge or mend-  
 inge for any cause, lette the shepeherde take that shepe  
 with his hoke, and put hym in the lyttell folde. And  
 whan he hath taken all that nedeth any mendyng, than  
 20 put the other in-to whether pasture he wyll, and let in as  
 many out of the greate folde, and take those that nede  
 any handling, and put them into the lyttell folde. And  
 thus peruse them all tyll he haue doone, and than let the  
 24 shepeherde go belte, grese, and handel all those that he  
 hath drawen, and than shall not the great flocke be taryed  
 nor kepte from theyr meate: and as he hath mended  
 them, to put them into theyr pasture.

Let the  
shepherd  
examine  
them in the  
middle fold.

Put the sick  
ones in the  
little fold.

## 41. ¶ To belte shepe.

- If any shepe raye or be fyled with dounge about the  
 the tayle, take a payre of sheres and clyppe it awaye, and  
 cast dry muldes thervpon: and if it be in the heate of the  
 4 sommer, it wolde be rubbed euer with a lyttell terre, to  
 kepe awaye the flies. It is necessarye that a shepeherde  
 haue a borde, set fast to the syde of his lyttell folde, to  
 laye his shepe vpon when he handeleth theym, and an  
 8 hole bored in the borde with an augur, and therin a  
 grayned staffe of two fote longe, to be set fast, to hang  
 his terre-boxe vpon, and than it shall not fall. And a  
 shepeherde shoulde not go without his dogge, his shepe-  
 12 hoke, a payre of sheres, and his terre-boxe, eyther with  
 hym, or redye at his shepe-folde, and he muste teche his  
 dogge to barke whan he wolde haue hym, to ronne whan  
 he wold haue hym, and to leue ronning whan he wolde  
 16 haue hym; or els he is not a cunninge shepeherd. The  
 dogge must lerne it, whan he is a whelp, or els it wyl  
 not be: for it is harde to make an olde dogge to stoupe.

[Fol. 29.]

How to belt  
sheep.

Have a  
board to lay  
a sheep  
upon.

A shepherd  
wants a dog,  
a hook,  
shears, and  
a tar-box.

## 42. ¶ To grease shepe.

How to  
grease  
sheep.[Fol. 29<sup>b</sup>.]Part the  
wool and put  
tae on.

If any sheepe be scabbed, the shepeherde maye perceyue it by the bytynge, rubbyng, or scratchyng with his horne, and mooste commonly the woll wyll ryse, and  
 4 be thyn or bare in that place: than take hym, and shede the woll with thy fyngers, there as the scab is, and with thy fynger laye a lyttell terre thervpon, and stroke it a lengthe in the bottom of the woll, that it be not seen  
 8 aboue. And so shede the woll by and by, and laye a lyttell terre thervpon, tyll thou passe the sore, and than it wyll go no farther.

## 43. ¶ To medle terre.

How to mix  
tar.

Let thy terre be medled with oyle, gose-grease, or capons grease, these three be the beste, for these wyll make the terre to ronne abroad: butter and swynes grease,  
 4 whan they be molten, are good, soo they be not salte; for terre of hym-selfe is to kene, and is a fretter, and no healer, without it be medled with some of these.

## 44. ¶ To make brome salue.

[Fol. 30.]

Chop broom  
small, and  
boil it;add suet and  
brine;use it warm  
with a  
sponge.

¶ A medicyne to salue poore mennes shepe, that thynke terre to costely: but I doubte not, but and ryche men knowe it, they wolde vse the same. Take a shete ful of  
 4 brome, croppes, leaues, blossomes, and all, and chop them very smal, and than sethe them in a pan of .xx. gallons with rennyng water, tyll it begyn to waxe thycke like a gelly, than take two pounce of shepe suet molten,  
 8 and a pottell of olde pysse, and as moche bryne made with salte, and put all in-to the sayde panne, and styrre it aboute, and than streyne it thorowe an olde clothe, and putte it in-to what vessell ye wyll, and yf your shepe be  
 12 newe clypped, make it luke-warme, and than washe your shepe there-with, with a sponge or a pece of an olde mantell, or of faldyng, or suche a softe cloth or woll,

for spendynge to moche of your salue. And at all tymes  
 16 of the yere after, ye may relent it, and nede require : and  
 make wyde sheydes in the woll of the shepe, and anoynt  
 them with it, & it shal heale the scabbe, and kyll the  
 shepe-lyce, and it shall not hurte the woll in the sale  
 20 therof. And those that be washen wyll not take scabbe  
 after (if they haue sufficient meate) ; for that is the beste  
 grease that is to a shepe, to grease hym in the mouthe  
 with good meate ; the whiche is also a greate sauegarde  
 24 to the shepe for rottynge, excepte there come myldewes,  
 for he wyl chose the beste, if he haue plentye. And  
 he that hath but a fewe shepe moderate this medicyne  
 accordynge.

It can be  
 used at any  
 time.

Good meat  
 in the mouth  
 [Fol. 30b.]  
 is the best  
 grease for  
 sheep.

#### 45. ¶ If a shepe haue mathes.

If a shepe haue mathes, ye shall perceyue it by her  
 bytynge, or fyskyng, or shakyng of her tayle, and mooste  
 commonlye it is moyst and wete : and if it be nyghe vnto  
 4 the tayle, it is ofte tymes grene, and fyled with his  
 dounge : and than the shepeherde muste take a payre  
 of sheres, and clyppe awaye the woll bare to the skynne,  
 and take a handfull of drye moldes, and cast the moldes  
 8 therupon to drye vp the wete, and then wype the muldes  
 away, and lay terre there as the mathes were, and a lyttell  
 farther. And thus loke theym euery daye, and mende  
 theym, if they haue nede.

Maggots in  
 sheep.

How cured.

#### 46. ¶ Blyndenes of shepe, and other dyseases, and remedies therfore.

There be some shepe that wyll be blynd a season, and  
 yet mende agayn. And if thou put a lytel terre in his eye,  
 he will mende the rather. There be dyuers waters, &  
 4 other medicyns, that wolde mende hym, but this is  
 [the] mooste common medicyne that shepeherdes vse.

Blindness in  
 sheep.

[Fol. 31.]

## 47. ¶ The worme in the shepes fote, and helpe therfore.

There be some shepe, that hath a worme in his foote,  
 that maketh hym halte. Take that shepe, and loke be-  
 twene his clese, and there is a lyttell hole, as moche as a  
 4 greatte pynnes heed, and therin groweth fyue or syxe  
 blacke heares, lyke an inche long and more ; take a sharpe  
 poynted knyfe, and slytte the skynne a quarter of an inche  
 long aboue the hole and as moche benethe, and put thy  
 How cured. 8 one hande in the holowe of the fote, vnder the hynder  
 clese, and set thy thombe aboue almooste at the slytte,  
 and thruste thy fyngers vnderneath forward, and with thy  
 12 thy knyues poynte, and pull the heares a lyttell and a  
 lyttell, and thruste after thy other hande, with thy fynger  
 and thy thombe, and there wyll come oute a worme lyke  
 a pece of fleshe, nygh as moche as a lyttel fynger. And  
 16 whan it is out, put a lyttel tarre into the hole, and it wyll  
 be shortely hole.

[Fol. 31<sup>b</sup>.]

## 48. ¶ The blode, and remedy if one come betyme.

There is a sicknes among shepe, and is called the  
 bloude ; that shepe, that hath that, wil dye sodeinly, and  
 er he dye, he wil stande stil, and hange downe the heed,  
 4 & other-while quake. If the shepeherde can espye  
 hym, let him take and rubbe hym about the heed, &  
 specyally about his eares, and vnder his eyen, & with  
 a knyfe cut of his eares in the middes, & also let hym  
 Cut off the 8 blode in a veyne vnder his eien : and if he blede wel,  
 sheep's ears. he is lyke to lyue ; and if he blede not, than kil him, and  
 saue his fleshe. For if he dye by hym-selfe, the flesshe is  
 loste, and the skyn wyll be ferre ruddyer, lyke blode,  
 12 more than an other skynne shall be. And it taketh  
 mooste commonly the fattest and best lykyng.

## 49. ¶ The pockes, and remedy therfore.

The pockes appere vppon the skyn, and are lyke reed Pocks in sheep.  
 pymples, as brode as a farthyng, and therof wyll dye  
 many. And the remedy therfore is, to handle all thy  
 4 shepe, and to loke on euery parte of theyr bodyes: and  
 as many as ye fynde taken therwith, put them in fresshe [Fol. 32.]  
 newe grasse, and kepe them fro theyr felowes, and to  
 loke thy flocke ofte, and drawe theym as they nede. And  
 8 if it be in sommer tyme, that there be no froste, than  
 washe them. Howe be it some shepeherdes haue other Wash them.  
 medycines.

## 50. ¶ The wode euyll, and remedy therfore.

There is a sickenes among shepe, and is called the  
 wode euyll, and that cometh in the sprynge of the yere, 'Wood-evil' in sheep.  
 and takethe them moste commonly in the legges, or in  
 4 the necke, and maketh them to halt, and to holde theyr  
 necke awry. And the mooste parte that haue that sick-  
 nes, wyl dye shortly in a day or two. The best remedy is,  
 to wasshe theym a lyttell, and to chaunge theyr grounde, Wash them and change their pasture.  
 8 and to bryng them to lowe grounde and freshe grasse.  
 And that sycknes is moste commonly on hylly grounde,  
 ley grounde, and ferny grounde, And some men vse to let  
 them bloudde vnder the eye in a vaine for the same cause.

## 51. ¶ To washe shepe.

In June is tyme to shere shepe, and er they be shorne, Wash and shear sheep in June.  
 they muste be very well wasshen, the whiche shall be to  
 the owner great profyte in the sale of his woll, and also to [Fol. 32b.]  
 4 the clothe-maker; but yet beware, that thou put not to many  
 shepe in a penne at one tyme, neyther at the washyng,  
 nor at the sheryng, for feare of murtheryng or ouer-press-  
 yng of their felowes, and that none go awaye, tyll he be  
 8 cleane washen, and se that they that hold the shepe by  
 the heed in the water, holde his heed hye ynoughe for  
 drownynge.

## 52. ¶ To shere shepe.

How to  
shear sheep.

Take hede of the sherers, for touchyng the shepe with the sheres, and specially for prykyng with the poynte of the sheres, and that the shepeherde be alway redy with  
4 his tarboxe to salue them. And se that they be well marked, bothe eare-marke, pitche-marke, and radel-marke, and let the wol be well folden or wounden with a woll-wynder, that can good skylle therof, the whiche shal  
8 do moche good in the sale of the same.

Mark them  
well.

## 53. ¶ To drawe and seuer the badde shepe from the good.

Separate  
the sheep in-  
to flocks.

[Fol. 33.]

Whan thou haste all shorne thy shepe, it is than best tyme to drawe them, and soo seuer theym in dyuers sortes ; the shepe that thou wylte fede by them-selfe, the ewes by  
4 theym-selfe, the share-hogges and theyues by them-selfe, the lambes by theym-selfe, wedders and the rammes by them-self, if thou haue soo many pastures for them : for the byggest wyll beate the weikeste with his heed. And of  
8 euery sort of shepe, it may fortune there be some, that like not and be weike ; those wolde be put in freshe grasse by theym-selfe : and whan they be a lyttel mended, than sel them, and ofte chaunge of grasse shal mend all  
12 maner of cattell.

Put those of  
one kind  
together.

## 54. ¶ What thynges rotteth shepe.

Spear-wort.

It is necessary that a shepeherde shoulde knowe what thynges rotteth shepe, that he myght kepe them the better. Ther is a grasse called sperewort, and hath a  
4 long narowe leafe, lyke a spere-heed, and it wyll growe a fote hyghe, and beareth a yelowre floure, as brode as a peny, and it growethe alwaye in lowe places where the water is vsed to stande in wynter. An other grasse is  
8 called peny-grasse, and groweth lowe by the erthe in a marsshe ground, and hath a leafe as brode as a peny of

Penny-  
grass.

two pens, and neuer beareth floure. All maner of grasse,  
 that the lande-floudde renneth ouer, is verye ylle for [Fol. 33b.]  
 12 shepe, bycause of the sande and fylthe that stycketh  
 vppon it. All marreys grounde, and marsche grounde is Marshy  
ground is  
bad.  
 yll for shepe; the grasse that groweth vppon falowes is  
 not good for shepe; for there is moche of it wede, and  
 16 ofte tymes it commeth vppe by the rote, and that bryng-  
 eth erthe with it, and they eate both, &c. Myldewe- Mildew.  
 grasse is not good for shepe, and that ye shall knowe two  
 wayes. One is by the leaues on the trees in the morn-  
 20 ynge, and specyally of okes; take the leaues, and putte  
 thy tonge to them, and thou shalt fele lyke hony vppon  
 them. And also there wyll be many kelles vppon the  
 grasse, and that causeth the myldewe. Wherfore they  
 24 may not well be let out of the folde tyll the sonne haue  
 domynation to drye them awaye. Also hunger-rotte is Hunger-  
rot.  
 the worst rotte that can be, for there is neither good  
 flesshe nor good skynne, and that cometh for lacke of  
 28 meate, and so for hunger they eate suche as they can  
 fynde: and so will not pasture-shepe, for they selden  
 rot but with myldewes, and than wyll they haue moch  
 talowe and fleshe, and a good skyn. Also white snails White  
snails.  
 32 be yll for shepe in pastures, and in falowes. There  
 is an other rotte, whiche is called pelte-rotte, and that Pelt-rot.  
 commeth of greatte wete, specyally in woode countreyes, [Fol. 34.]  
 where they can not drye.

55. ¶ To knowe a rotten shepe dyuers maner wayes,  
 wherof some of them wyll not fayle.

Take bothe your handes, and twyrle vpon his eye, and How to  
know  
rotten sheep.  
 if he be ruddy, and haue reed stryndes in the white of  
 the eye, than he is sounde; and if the eye be white, lyke  
 4 talowe, and the stryndes darke-coloured, thanne he is  
 rotten. And also take the shepe, and open the wolle  
 on the syde, and yf the skynne be of ruddy colour and

Rotten  
sheep  
have loose  
wool.

drye, than is he sounde; and if it be pale-coloured, and  
 8 watrye, thanne is he rotten. Also whanne ye haue  
 opened the woll on the syde, take a lyttell of the woll  
 bytwene thy fynger and thy thombe, and pull it a lyttell,  
 and if it sticke faste, he is sounde, and if it comme  
 12 lyghtely of, he is rotten. Also whan thou haste kylde a  
 shepe, his belly wyll be full of water, if he be sore  
 rotten, and also the fatte of the fleshe wyll be yelow, e  
 if he be rotten. And also if thou cut the lyuer, therin  
 16 wyll be lyttell quikens lyke flokes, and also the lyuer  
 wyll be full of knottes and whyte blysters, yf he be  
 rotten; and also sethe the lyuer, if he be rotten it wyll  
 breke in peces, and if he be sounde, it wyll holde  
 20 together.

Rotten  
sheep have  
flukes in the  
liver.  
[Fol. 34b.]

### 56. ¶ To bye leane cattell.

How to buy  
oxen.

How to buy  
cows.

How to  
choose an  
ox.

These housbandes, if they shall well thryue, they  
 muste haue bothe kye, oxen, horses, mares, and yonge  
 cattell, and to rere and brede euery yere some calues,  
 4 and fools, or els shall he be a byer. And yf thou shalte  
 by oxen for the ploughe, se that they be yonge, and  
 not gowty, nor broken of heare, neyther of tayle, nor  
 of pysell. And yf thou bye kye to the payle, se that  
 8 they be yonge and good to mylke, and fede her calues  
 wel. And if thou bye kye or oxen to feede, the yonger  
 they be, the rather they wyll fede; but loke well, that  
 the heare stare not, and that he lycke hym-selfe, and  
 12 be hoole-mouthed, and want no tethe. And thoughe he  
 haue the goute and be broken, bothe of tayle and  
 pysell, yet wyll he fede. But the gouty ox wyll not  
 be dryuen ferre; and se that he haue a brode ryb, and  
 16 a thicke hyde, and to be lose-skinned, that it stycke not  
 harde nor streyte to his rybbes, for than he wyll not fede.

## 57. ¶ To bye fatte cattell.

[Fol. 35.]

If thou shalte bye fatte oxen or kye, handel them, and se that they be soft on the fore-croppe, behynde the shulder, and vpon the hindermost rybbe, and upon  
 4 the hucbone, and the nache by the tayle. And se the ox haue a greate codde, and the cowe great nauyll, for than it shulde seme that they shuld be wel talowed. And take hede, where thou byeste any leane  
 8 cattel or fat, and of whom, and where it was bred. For if thou by out of a better ground than thou haste thyselfe, that cattell wyll not lyke with the. And also loke, that there be no maner of sycknes amonge the  
 12 cattell in that towneshyp or pasture that thou byest thy catel oute of. For if there be any murren or longe sought, it is great ieoperdy: for a beast maye take sycknes ten or .xii. dayes or more, ere it appere on hym.

How to buy fat cattle.

See where, and of whom, you buy.

## 58. ¶ Dyuers syncnesses of cattell, and remedies therfore, and fyrst of murren.

And yf it fortune to fall murren amonge thy beastes, as god forbede, there be men ynough can helpe them. And it commeth of a ranknes of bloudde, and appereth  
 4 moste commonly fyrste in the heed; for his heed wyll swell, and his eyen waxe greate and ronne of water and frothe at the mouthe, and than he is paste remedy, and wyl dye shortely, and wyll neuer eate after he be  
 8 sycke. Than flee him, and make a depe pytte faste by, there as he dyeth, and caste hym in, and couer hym with erthe, that noo dogges may come to the caryen. For as  
 12 many beastes as feleth the smelle of that caryen, are lykely to be enfecte; and take the skynne, and haue it to the tanners to sell, and bryng it not home, for peryll that may fal. And it is commonly vsed, and cometh of  
 a greate charytie, to take the bare heed of the same beaste  
 16 and put vpon a longe pole, and set it in a hedge, faste

Murrain.

[Fol. 35<sup>b</sup>.]

Flay the dead beast, and bury it.

Set the beast's head, on a pole, in the hedge.

bounden to a stake, by the hyghe-waye syde, that euerye man, that rydethe or goeth that waye, maye se and knowe by that signe, that there is sycknes of cattell in the towne-  
 20 shyp. And the husbundes holde an opynyon, that it shall the rather cease. And whanne the beaste is flaine, there as the murren dothe appere bytwene the flesshe and the skynne, it wyll ryse vppe lyke a ielly and frothe an inche  
 24 depe or more. And this is the remedy for the murren. Take a smalle curteyne-corde, and bynde it harde aboute the beastes necke, and that wyll cause the bloudd to come in-to the necke, and on eyther syde of the necke  
 28 there is a vayne that a man may fele with his fynger; and than take a bloud-yren, and set it streight vppon the vayne, and smyte him bloudd on bothe sydes, and let hym blede the mountenaunce of a pynte or nyghe it, and  
 32 than take awaye the corde, and it wyll staunche bleding. And thus serue all thy cattell, that be in that close or pasture, and there shall no mo be sicke, by goddes leue.

Remedy for 24  
murrain.

[Fol. 36.]

Bleed the  
sick cattle.

### 59. ¶ Longe sought, and remedy therefore.

There is an nother maner of sycknesse among bestes, and it is called longe soughte; and that sickenes wyl endure long, and ye shal perceyue it by his hoystynge;  
 4 he wyl stande moche, and eate but a littel, and waxe very holowe & thin. And he wil hoyst .xx. times in an houre, and but fewe of them do mende. The best remedy is to kepe thy cattell in sondrye places, and as many as were  
 8 in companye with that beast that fyrst fell sycke, to let them a lyttel bloude. And there be many men, that can seuer them, and that is to cutte the dewlappe before, and there is a grasse that is called feitergrasse, take that  
 12 grasse, and broyse it a lyttell in a mortar, and thanne put therof as moche as an hennes egge in-to the sayd dewlappe, and se it fall not oute. Thus I have seen vsed, and men haue thought it hath done good.

'Long  
sought.'

The beast  
coughs 20  
times an  
hour.

[Fol. 36b.]

Cut the  
dewlap.

60. ¶ Dewbolne,<sup>1</sup> and the harde remedy therfore.

An other dysease amonge beastes is called dewbolne,<sup>1</sup> 'Dewbolne.'  
 and that commeth whan a hungry beaste is put in a  
 good pasture full of ranke grasse, he wyll eate soo  
 4 moche that his sydes wyll stande as hygh as his backe-  
 bone, and other-whyle the one syde more thanne the  
 other, and but fewe of them wyll dye; but he maye  
 not be dryuen hastely, nor laboured, being so swollen, The beast is swollen.  
 8 and the substaunce of it is but wynde; and therfore  
 he wolde be softly dryuen, and not sytte downe. Howe  
 be it I haue seen a manne take a knyfe, and thruste hym  
 thorowe the skynne and the flesshe two inches depe, or Some men pierce a hole in the beast.  
 12 more, vi. inches or more from the ridge-bone, that the  
 wynde maye come out. For the wynde lyeth bytwene [Fol. 37.]  
 the fleshe and the grete paunche.

## 61. ¶ Rysen vpon, and the remedy therfore.

An other dysease is called rysen vpon, and no man 'Risen upon.'  
 can tell howe, nor wherof it cometh: but ye shall per-  
 ceuyue that by swellynge in the heed, and specyallye by  
 4 the eyen, for they wyll ronne on water, and close his The beast's eyes run.  
 syght; and wyll dye shortly within an houre or two, if  
 he be not holpen. This is the cause of his dysease.  
 There is a blyster rysen vnder the tounge, the whiche  
 8 blyster must be slytte with a knyfe a-crosse. Whan ye  
 haue pulled out the tongue, rubbe the blyster well with Find the blister under the tongue, and cut it.  
 salte, and take an hennes egge, and breake it in the  
 beastes mouthe shell and all, and cast salte to it, and  
 12 holde vp the bestes heed, that all maye be swallowed  
 downe into the body. But the breakynge of the blyster  
 is the greate helpe, and dryue the beaste a lyttell aboute,  
 and this shall saue hym, by the helpe of Jesu.

<sup>1</sup> *Misprinted Dewbolue, dewbolue.*

## 62. ¶ The turne, and remedy therfor.

[Fol. 37b.]  
The turne.There is a  
bladder  
between the  
brain and  
brain-pan.Cut the  
bone, but  
not the  
brain, and  
take out the  
bladder.

[Fol. 38.]

- There be beastes that wyll turne about, whan they  
eate theyr meate, and wyll not fede, and is great  
ieoperdy for fallynge in pyttes, dyches, or waters: and  
4 it is bycause that there is a bladder in the foreheed  
bytvene the brayne-panne and the braynes, the whiche  
must be taken out, or els he shal neuer mende, but dye  
at lengthe, and this is the remedy and the greatest cure  
8 that can be on a beaste. Take that beast, and cast him  
downe, and bynde his foure fete together, and with thy  
thombe, thrust the beast in the foreheed, and where  
thou fyndest the softest place, there take a knyfe, and  
12 cut the skyn, three or foure inches on bothe sides  
bytvene the hornes, and as moche benethe towarde  
the nose, and fley it, and turne it vp, and pyn it faste  
with a pyn, and with a knyfe cut the brayne-pan .ii.  
16 inches brode, and thre inches longe, but se the knyfe  
go no deper than the thycknes of the bone for peryssh-  
ynge of the brayne, and take away the bone, and than  
shalt thou se a bladder full of water two inches longe  
20 and more, take that out, and hurte not the brayne, and  
thanne let downe the skynne, and sowe it faste there  
as it was before, and bynde a clothe two or thre folde  
vpon his foreheed, to kepe it from colde and wete .x. or  
24 .xii. dayes. And thus haue I seen many mended. But  
if the beaste be fatte, and any reasonable meate vpon  
hym, it is best to kyll hym, for than there is but lyttell  
losse. And if the bladder be vnder the horne, it is  
28 past cure. A shepe wyll haue the turne as well as a  
beast, but I haue seen none mended.

## 63. ¶ The warrybrede, and the remedy therfore.

'Warry-  
brede.'

There be beastes that wyll haue warrybreds in dyuers  
partes of theyr body and legges, and this is the remedy.  
Cast hym downe, and bynde his foure fete together, and

4 take a culture, or a payre of tonges, or such an other Take a hot iron, and sear it.  
 yren, and take it glowing hote: and if it be a longe  
 warrybrede, sere it of harde by the body, and if it be  
 in the beginninge, and be but flatte, than lay the hot  
 8 yren vpon it, and sere it to the bare skyn, and it will be  
 hole for euer, be it horse or beast.

#### 64. ¶ The foule, and the remedy therfore.

There be bestes, that wyll haue the foule, and that 'The foul.'  
 is betwene the cleese, sometye before, and sometye  
 behynde, and it wyll swell, and cause hym to halt, and [Fol. 38b.]  
 4 this is the remedy. Cast hym downe and bind his foure  
 fete together, & take a rope of heare, or a hey-rope,  
 harde wrythen together, and put it betwene his cleese,  
 and drawe the rope to and fro a good season, tyll he  
 8 blede well, and than laye to it softe made terre, and  
 binde a cloute aboute it, that noo myre nor grauell  
 come betwene the clese: and put hym in a pasture, or  
 let hym stande styll in the house, and he wyll be  
 12 shortly hole.

#### 65. ¶ The goutte, without remedy.

There be beastes, that wyll haue the goutte, and moste The gout.  
 commonly in the hynder fete, and it wyll cause them to  
 halt, and go starkely. And I knewe neuer manne that  
 4 coulde helpe it, or fynde remedye therfore, but all-onely No remedy.  
 to put hym in good grasse, and fede hym.

#### 66. ¶ To rere calues.

It is conueniente for a housbande to rere calues, and To rear calves.  
 specyally those that come bytwene Candelmasse and  
 Maye, for that season he may spare mylke beste; and by  
 4 that tyme the calfe shall be wayned, there wyll be grasse [Fol. 39.]  
 ynoughe to put hym vnto. And at winter he wyll be  
 bygge ynoughe to saue hym-selfe amonge other beastes,

A cow gives  
more milk  
on grass  
than on hay.

[Fol. 39b.]

Do not wean  
calves on  
hay.

with a lyttell fauoure. And the damme of the calfe shall  
 8 bull agayne, and brynge an other by the same time of  
 the yere: and if thou shalt tary tyll after May, the calfe  
 wolde be weyke in wynter, and the damme wolde not  
 bull agayne: but ofte tyme go bareyn. And if thou  
 12 shalte rere a calfe that commeth after Myghelmasse, it  
 wyll be costly to kepe the calfe all the wynter-season at  
 hey, and the damme at harde meate in the house, as they  
 vse in the playne champion cuntry. And a cowe shall  
 16 gyue more mylke with a lyttell grasse and strawe, lyenge  
 without in a close, thanne she shall doo with hey and  
 strawe, lyenge in an house; for the harde meate dryeth  
 vp the mylke. But he that hath no pasture, muste do as  
 20 he may; but yet is it better to the housbande to sell those  
 calues than to rere them, bycause of the cost, and also  
 for the profytte of the mylke to his house, and the rather  
 the cowe wyll take the bull. If the husbande go with  
 24 an oxe-plough, it is conuenient that he rere two oxe-  
 calues and two cowe-calues at the least, to vpholde his  
 flocke, and if he maye do moo, it wyll be more profyte.  
 And it is better, to wayne thy calues at grasse before.  
 28 And that man, that maye haue a pasture for his kye, and  
 an other for his calues, and water in them both, maye  
 rere and brede good beastes with lyghte coste. And if  
 thou waine thy calues with hey, it wyl make them haue  
 32 great belyes, and the rather they wyll rotte whan they  
 come to grasse, and in wynter they wolde be put in a  
 house by them-selfe, and gyuen hey on the nyghtes, and  
 put in a good pasture on the day, and they shal be moche  
 36 better to handell, whan they shal be kye or oxen.

### 67. To gelde calues.

To geld ox-  
calves.

It is tyme to gelde his oxen calues in the olde of the  
 mone, whan they be .x. or .xx. dayes olde, for than it is  
 leaste ieoperdye, and the oxe shall be the more hyer, and  
 4 the lenger of body, and the lenger horned: and that maye

be well prouyd, to take two oxen-calues, both of one kynde,  
 of one makynge, and both of one age; gelde one of  
 them, and let the other goo forth and be a bull, and  
 8 put theym bothe in one pasture, tyll they be foure or  
 fyue yere olde: and than shall ye se the oxen-calfe ferre A gelt calf  
grows  
bigger than  
a bull.  
[Fol. 40.]  
 greatter euery waye than the bull; there is noo cause but  
 the geldynge; and yf thou gelde them not tyll they be  
 12 a yere olde, there is more ieopardye, he shall be lesse of  
 bodye, and shorte-horned.

68. ¶ *Horses and mares to drawe.*

A husbände maye not be withoute horses and mares, Horses and  
mares.  
 or bothe; and specially, if he go with a horse-ploughe, he  
 muste haue both his horses to drawe, and his mares to  
 4 brynge coltes, to vpholde his flocke, and yet at manye  
 tymes they maye drawe well, if they be well handled.  
 But they maye not beare sakes, nor be rydden vppon  
 noo iourneys whan they be with foole, and specially  
 8 whanne they haue gone with foole .xx. or .xxiiii. wekes,  
 for than is the greateste ieopardy. For yf she be rydden  
 vppon, and sette vp hotte, or tourned out and take cold,  
 she wil caste her foole, the whiche wolle be a greatte losse  
 12 to the housbände. For she wyll labour and beare whan  
 she hath fooled, and drawe whan she is with foole, as  
 well as the horse. It is conuenient for the husbände to  
 knowe, whanne his mare wolde be horsed. It is the  
 16 common sayenge, that she wyll take the hors within .ix. or [Fol 406.]  
 .x. dayes, nexte after that she hath fooled: but that saying  
 I holde not with, for and she do so, she wyll not holde  
 therto, for the hors dothe dryue her to it. But .xx.  
 20 days after, is tymely ynoughe to brynge her to a hors.  
 For she wyl not holde to it, excepte she be kene of hors-  
 yng, and that shal ye knowe by her shap, for that wyll twyrle  
 open, and close agayne, many tymes in an houre: and than  
 24 brynge her to a hors, and let her be with hym a day or a

Keep the  
horse from  
the mares.

Men have  
various  
opinions  
about foals.

I have 60  
horses my-  
self.  
[Fol. 41.]

With men  
who speak  
sophisti-  
cally,

a filly may  
be called a  
horse-foal;  
and a colt  
may be  
called a  
mare-foal.

nyght, and that is suffycient. For it is better, to kepe  
the horse frome the mares, than to go with them, for  
dyuers causes, and specyaliy he shall be more lusty, and  
28 the moo horse-coltes shall he gete. But he that hath  
very many mares, may not alway attende them, but let  
them go to-gether, and take as god sendes it. Some  
men holde an opinion, that if the horse be put to the  
32 mare in the begynnyng of the moone, after it be prime,  
he shall gete a horse-foole. And some men saye the con-  
trary: that if he be putte to the mare in the olde of  
the mone, he shoulde gete horse-fooles. And I saye,  
36 it maketh noo matter, whether: for this cause I haue  
proued. I haue my selfe .lx. mares and more, able to  
beare the horse, and from Maye daye vnto saynte Bar-  
thylmewes daye, I have .v. or .vi. horses goynge with  
40 theym bothe daye and nyghte, and at the foolynge-tyme  
I haue vpon one daye a horse-fole, and on the nexte  
daye, or seconde, a mare-fole, and on the thirde or  
fourth day next after, a horse-fole agayne, and soo euery  
44 weke of bothe sortes, and by theyr opynyon or reason,  
I shulde haue .xiii. dayes together horse-fooles, and  
other .xiii. dayes together mare-foles. And me semethe,  
that those men that holde that opynyon, speke sophysty-  
48 callye; that if soo be they layde any wagers thervppon,  
that they shoulde bothe wyne in theyr owne conceyte  
by this reason. Whether it were gette in the newe of  
the mone or in the olde of the mone, it is a horse-foole,  
52 bycause a horse gate it, though it be a felly-fole; and it  
is a mare-fole, bycause a mare fooled it, thoughe it be  
a horse-colte. And so (*Diuersis respectibus*) theyr opyn-  
ions maye be trewe. But of one thyng I am certayne,  
56 that some one horse wyll gette more horse-fooles than  
other horse wyll doo, and lyke wyse a mare wyll beare moo  
mare-fooles than some other mare wyll do, thoughe they  
be horsed bothe with one horse. Me semeth there is

- 60 no reason why, but the lustynes of the nature of bothe partes, whether of them shall haue the domination. [Fol. 41b.]  
 But and ye haue mares of dyuers colours, than do as I do, seuer them in diuers parcels, and put to your  
 64 white mares a grey horse, or a whyte horse that hath With white mares put a gray horse.  
 noo whyte rathe in the foreheed; and to your grey mares a white horse, so that he be not al white-skynned aboute the mouthe. And to your mares of colour, that  
 68 haue no white vpon them, a coloured horse that hath moch white on hym, and to your coloured mares of mayne whyte, a horse of colour of mayn whyte. And thus shal ye haue well coloured coltes. It maketh noo  
 72 mater of what colour the horse be, soo he be neyther whyte nor grey. For if ye put a whyte horse to a Put not a white horse with a coloured mare.  
 coloured mare, she shall haue moste comonly a sandy colte, lyke an yren-gray, neyther lyke syre nor damme.  
 76 Howe be it I haue seen and knowen many mares, that wyll haue theyr colte lyke the horse that gate it, the whiche is agaynste kynde of mares, for a manne maye rather gette one good horse than many good mares.

### 69. ¶ The losse of a lambe, a calfe, or a foole.

- It is lesse hurte to a man, to haue his cowe caste her calfe, thanne an ewe to caste her lambe. For the calfe wyll soucke as moche mylke, er it be able to kyll, as it [Fol. 42.]  
 4 is worthe, and of the ewe commeth noo profytte of the mylke, but the lambe. Howe be it they vse in some places to mylke theyr ewes, whan they haue wayned theyr lambes: but that is great hurte to the ewes, and  
 8 wyll cause them, that they wyll not take the ramme at the tyme of the yere for pouertye, but goo barreyne. And if a mare caste her foole, that is thryse soo great A lost foal is a great loss.  
 a losse, for if that foole be commen of good brede, as  
 12 it is necessary euery man to prouyde, for as moche costes and charges hath a badde mare as a good, in

shorte space the foole, with good kepynge, maye be solde  
 15 for as moche money as wolde bye many calues and lambes.

70. ¶ What cattell shulde go to-gether in one pasture.

Put beasts  
 and horses  
 in a pasture  
 together.  
 [Fol. 42b.]

Beastes alone, nor horses alone, nor shepe alone,  
 excepte it be shepe vppon a verye hyghe grounde, wyll  
 not eate a pasture euen, but leaue many tuftes and hyghe  
 4 grasse in dyuers places, excepte it be ouer-layde with  
 cattell. Wherefore knowe that horses and beastes wyll  
 agree well in oone pasture, for there is some maner of  
 grasse that a horse<sup>1</sup> wyll eate, and the beast wyl  
 8 not eate, as the fytches, flasshes, and lowe places, and  
 all the holowe bunnnes and pypes that growe therin. But  
 horses and shepe wyll not so well agree, excepte it be  
 shepe to fede, for a shepe wyll go on a bare pasture, and  
 12 wyll eate the swetesteste grasse: and soo wyll a horse, but he  
 wolde haue it lenger. Howe be it he wyll eate as nyghe  
 the erthe as a shepe, but he can not so sone fyll his  
 belly. To an hundred beastes ye maye put .xx. horses,  
 16 if it be lowe ground, and if there be grasse ynoughe,  
 put in an hundred shepe, and so after the rate, be the  
 pasture more or lesse. And after this maner they may  
 fede and eate the close euen and leue but fewe tuftes.  
 20 And if it be an hyghe grounde, put in moo shepe,  
 and lesse bestes and horses. Melch kye, and draught  
 oxen, wyll eate a close moche barer than as many fatte  
 kye and oxen. And a melche cowe may haue to moch  
 24 meate: for if she waxe fatte, she wyll the rather take  
 the bull, and gyue lesse mylke. For the fatnes stoppeth  
 the poores and the vaines, that shuld brynge the mylke  
 to the pappes. And therfore meane grasse is beste  
 28 to kepe her in a meane estate. And if a cowe be  
 fatte, whan she shall calue, than is there great ieoperdy  
 in her, and the calfe shall be the lesse: but ye can not

With 100  
 beasts put 20  
 horses.

Milch kine  
 should not  
 be too fat,

but have a  
 moderate  
 diet.

<sup>1</sup> *Misprinted* or horse; but the catchwords are a horse.

gyue your draught-oxe to moche meate, excepte it be [Fol. 43.]  
 32 the aftermath of a late mowen medowe. For that wyll  
 cause hym to haue the gyrrre, and than he maye not well  
 laboure. And there be to moche grasse in a close, the Too much  
grass is bad.  
 cattel shall fede the worse, for a good bytte to the erthe  
 36 is suffycyente. For if it be longe, the beaste wyll byte  
 of the toppe and noo more, for that is swetest, and the  
 other lyeth styll vppon the grounde and rotteth, and  
 no beaste wyll eate it but horse in wynter; but these  
 40 beastes, horses and shepe, maye not be fodered to-gether  
 in wynter, for thanne they wolde be seuered: for els In winter,  
beasts will  
gore horses  
and sheep.  
 the beastes with theyr hornes wyll put bothe horses  
 and the shepe, and gore them in theyr bellyes. And it  
 44 is necessarye to make standynge cratches, to caste theyr  
 fodder in, and the staues set nyghe ynough togyther,  
 for pullynge theyr fodder to hastely out, for shedynge.  
 And if it be layde vppon the erthe, the fourthe parte  
 48 therof wyll be loste: and if ye laye it vpon the erthe,  
 laye it euerye tyme in a newe place, for the olde wyll  
 marre the newe.

71. ¶ *The properties of horses.*

Thou grasyer, that mayst fortune to be of myne [Fol. 43b.]  
Grazier, be  
not be-  
guiled!  
 opynyon or condityon, to loue horses and yonge coltes  
 or foles to go amonge thy cattel, take hede that thou  
 4 be not begyled, as I haue ben an hundred tymes and I have been  
so 100 times.  
 more. And first thou shalt knowe, that a good horse A good horse  
has 54  
properties;  
 hath .liiii. propertyes, that is to say .ii. of a man, .ii. of  
 a bauson or a badger, .iiii. of a lyon, .ix. of an oxe, .ix.  
 8 of an hare, .ix. of a foxe, .ix. of an asse, and .x. of a  
 woman.

72. ¶ *The two properties, that a horse hath of a man.*

The fyrste is, to haue a proude harte; and the seconde two, of a  
man:  
 is, to be bolde and hardy.

**73. *Two properties of a badger.***

two, of a  
badger :

**73. The .ii. propertyes of a bauson.**

¶ The fyrste is, to haue a whyte rase or a ball in the foreheed ; the seconde, to haue a whyte fote.

**74. The .iiii. properties of a lyon.**

four, of a  
lyon :

¶ The fyrste is, to haue a brode breste ; the seconde, to be styffe-docked ; the thyrde, to be wylde in countenance ; the fourthe, to haue foure good legges.

**75. The .ix. propertyes of an ox.**

[Fol. 44.]  
nine, of an  
ox :

¶ The fyrste is, to be brode-rybbed ; the .ii. to be lowebrowed ; the thyrde, to be shortepastured ; the .iiii. to haue greatte senewes ; the fyfte, to be wyde betwene  
4 the challes ; the syxte is, to haue great nosethrylles ; the .vii. to be bygge on the chyn ; the .viii. to be fatte and well fedde ; the .ix. to be vpryghte standynge.

**76. The .ix. propertyes of an hare.**

nine, of a  
hare :

¶ The fyrste is styffe-eared ; the seconde, to haue greatelyn eyen ; the thyrde, round eyen ; the fourthe, to haue a leane heed ; the .v. to haue leane knees ; the syxte, to be  
4 wyght on foote ; the .vii. to turne vpon a lyttell grounde ; the .viii. to haue shorte buttockes ; the .ix. to haue two good fyllettes.

**77. The .ix. propertyes of a foxe.**

nine, of a  
fox :

¶ The fyrste is, to be prycke-eared, the seconde, to be lyttell-eared ; the thyrde, to be roundesyded ; the fourthe, to be syde-tayled ; the fyfte, to be shorte-  
4 legged ; the syxte, to be blacke-legged ; the .vii. to be shortetrottyng ; the .viii. to be well coloured ; the .ix. to haue a lyttell heed.

## 78. The .ix. propertyes of an asse.

¶ The fyrste is to be small-mouthed ; the seconde, to be longe-rayned : the .iii. to be thyn-credsed ; the fourthe, to be streyght-backed ; the fyfth, to haue small stones ;  
 4 the syxte, to be lathe-legged ; the .vii. to be rounde-foted ; the eyght, to be holowe-foted ; the .ix. to haue a toughe houe.

[Fol. 44<sup>b</sup>.]  
 nine, of an  
 ass :

## 79. The .x. properties of a woman.

¶ The fyrst is, to be mery of chere ; the seconde, to be well paced ; the thyarde, to haue a brode foreheed ; the fourth, to haue brode buttockes ; the fyfthe, to be harde  
 4 of warde ; the syxte, to be easye to lepe vppon ; the .vii. to be good at a longe iourneye ; the .viii. to be well sturryinge vnder a man ; the .ix. to be alwaye besye with the mouthe ; the tenth, euer to be chowyng on the  
 8 brydell. ¶ It myght fortune I coude shewe as many defautes of horses, as here be good propertyes, but than I shulde breake my promyse, that I made at Grombalde brydge, the first tyme I wente to Ryppon for to bye coltes.  
 12 But it is to suppose, that if a horse want any of these good propertyes, that he shulde haue a defeaute in the same place. And this is suffycient for this time.

ten, of a  
 woman :

I could tell  
 you faults of  
 horses, but  
 then I  
 should  
 break my  
 promise.

## 80. ¶ The diseases and sorance of horses.

[Fol. 45.]

Nowe it is to be knowen, the soraunce and dyseases of horses, & in what partes of theyr bodyes they be ; that a man maye the rather perceyue them. And howe be it  
 4 that it may be against my profyt, yet I wil shewe you suche as cometh to my mynde.

Diseases of  
 horses.

## 81. The lampas.

¶ In the mouthe is the lampas, & is a thycke skyn full of bloude, hangynge ouer his tethe aboue, that he may not eate.

The lampas.

**82. The disease called the Barbs.****82. The barbes.**

The barbs.

¶ The barbes be lyttell pappes in a horse mouth, and lette hym to byte : these two be sone holpen.

**83. Mournynge of the tonge.**

Mourning of the tongue.

¶ Mournynge of the tonge is an yll dysease, and harde to be cured.

**84. Pursy.**

Pursiness.

¶ Pursy is a dysease in an horses bodye, and maketh hym to blowe shorte, and appereth at his nosethrilles, and commeth of colde, and may be well mended.

**85. Broken-wynded.**Broken  
wind.  
[Fol. 45b.]

¶ Broken-wynded is an yll dysease, and cometh of rennynge or rydyngue ouer moche, and specially shortely after he is watred, and appereth at his nosethryll, at his  
4 flanke, and also at his tuell, and wyll not be mended ; and wyll moche blowe and coughe, if he be sore chafed ; and it wyl leaste appere, whan he is at grasse.

**86. Glaunders.**

Glanders.

¶ Glaunders is a disease, that may be mended, and commeth of a heate, and a sodeyne colde, and appereth at his nosethrylles, and betwene his chall-bones.

**87. Mournynge on the chyne.**Mourning  
on the chyne.

¶ Mournynge on the chyne is a dysease incurable, and it appereth at his nosethryll lyke oke-water. A glaunder whan it breaketh, is lyke matter. Broken-wynded, and  
4 pursynes, is but shorte blowynge.

## 88. Stranguellyon.

¶ Stranguelyon is a lyght dysease to cure, and a horse <sup>Stran-</sup>  
 wyl be very sore sycke therof, and cometh of a chafynge <sup>guelion.</sup>  
 hote, that he swete, and after he wyl ryse and swell in  
 4 dyuers places of his body, as moche as a mannes fyste ;  
 and wyl breake by it selfe, if it be kepte warme, or els  
 is there ieoperdy.

## 89. The hawe.

¶ The hawe is a sorance in a horse eye, and is lyke <sup>The haw.</sup>  
 gristell, and maye well be cutte oute, or els it wyl haue <sup>[Fol. 46,</sup>  
 out his eye ; and that horse that one, hath commonly <sup>misprinted</sup>  
 4 two. <sup>49.]</sup>

## 90. Blyndnes.

¶ A horse wyl waxe blynde with laboure, and that <sup>Blindness.</sup>  
 maye be cured betyme.

## 91. Viues.

¶ The viues is a sorance vnder a horse ere, bytwene the <sup>The viues.</sup>  
 ouer ende of the chall-bones and the necke, and are  
 rounde knottes bytwene the skyn and the fleshe lyke  
 4 tennes-balles ; and if they be not kilde, they wyl waxe  
 quicke, and eate the rotes of the horse eares, and kil hym.

## 92. The cordes.

¶ The cordes is a thyng that wyl make a horse to <sup>The cords.</sup>  
 stumble, and ofte to fall, and appereth before the forther  
 legges of the body of the horse, and may well be cured  
 4 in .ii. places, and there be but fewe horses but they  
 haue parte therof.

## 93. The farcyon.

¶ The farcyon is an yll soraunce, and maye well be cured <sup>The farcion.</sup>

in the begynnynge, and wyll appere in dyuers places of his bodye, and there wyll ryse pymples as moche as halfe a  
 4 walnutshell, and they wyll folowe a veyne, and wyll breake by it selfe. And as manye horses as do playe with him that is sore, and gnappe of the matter that renneth out of the sore, shall haue the same sorance within a  
 8 moneth after; and therfore kepe the sycke frome the hole. And if that sorance be not cured betyme, he wyll dye of it.

Other horses  
will catch it.

[Fol. 46b.]

#### 94. A malander.

¶ A malander is an yll sorance, and may wel be cured for a tyme, but with yl keping it wyl comme agayne, and appereth on the forther legges, in the bendynge of  
 4 the knee behynde, and is lyke a scabbe or a skal: and some horses wyll haue two vpon a legge, within an inche together, and they wyl make a horse to stumble, and other whyle to fall.

The  
malander.

#### 95. A selander.

¶ A selander is in the bendynge of the legge behynde, lyke as the malander is in the bendynge of the legge before, and is lyke a malander, and may be well cured.

The  
selander.

#### 96. A serewe.

¶ A serewe is an yll soraunce, and is lyke a splent, but it is a lyttell longer and more, and lyeth vppe to the knee on the inner syde. And some horses haue a throughe  
 4 serewe on bothe sydes of the legge, and that horse must nedes stumble and fall, and harde it is to be cured.

The serewe.

#### 97. A splent.

¶ A splent is the leaste soraunce that is, that alwaye contynueth, excepte lampas. And many men take vpon them to mende it, and do payre it.

A splent.

[Fol. 47.]

## 98. A ryngbone.

¶ A ryngbone is an yll soraunce, and appereth before on <sup>Ring-bone.</sup> the foote, aboue the houe, as well before as behynde, and wyll be swollen three inches brode, and a quarter  
 4 of an inche or more of heyghte, and the heare wyll stare and waxe thyn, and wyll make hym to halte, and is yll to cure, if it growe longe.

## 99. Wynd-galles.

¶ Wyndgalles is a lyghte sorance, and commeth of great <sup>Wind-galls.</sup> labour, and appereth on eyther syde of the ioynte aboue the fetelockes, as wel before as behynde, and is a lyttell  
 4 swollen with wynde.

## 100. Morfounde.

¶ Morfounde is an yll sorance, and cometh of rydyng <sup>Morfound.</sup> faste tyll he swete, and than sette vp sodeynely in a colde place, without lytter, and take cold on his fete, and  
 4 specially before, and appereth vnder the houe in the hert of the fote, for it wyll growe downe, and waxe whyte, and cromely lyke a pomis. And also wyl appere by <sup>It affects the feet.</sup> processe by the wryncles on the houe, and the houe  
 8 before wyll be thycker, and more bryckle than and he had not benne morfounde; nor he shall neuer trede so boldely vpon the harde stones as he dydde before; nor [Fol. 47b]  
 12 more; and with good paryng and shoyng, as he oughte to be, he wyll do good seruyce.

## 101. The coltes euyll.

¶ Coltes euyll is an yll disease, and commeth of ranknes <sup>The colt's evil.</sup> of nature and bloudde, and appereth in his scote, for there wyl he swel great, and wyll not be harde, and  
 4 soone cured in the begynnynge.

## 102. The bottles.

Bots in the  
maw.

¶ The bottles is an yll dysease, and they lye in a horse mawe, and they be an inche long, white-coloured, and a reed heed, and as moche as a fyngers ende, & they  
4 be quycke, and stycke faste in the mawe-syde ; it apperethe by stampynge of the horse, or tomblynge, and in the beginninge there is remedy ynoughe, and if they be not cured betyme, they wyll eate thorowe his mawe, and  
8 kyll hym.

## 103. The wormes.

Worms in  
the belly.

¶ The wormes is a lyght dysease, and they lye in the greatte paunche, in the belye of the horse, and they are shynynge, of colour lyke a snake, syxe inches in  
4 lengthe, greate in the myddes, and sharpe at bothe endes, and as moche as a spyndel, and wyll sone be kylde.

[Fol. 48.]

## 104. Affreyd.

' Affreyd.'

¶ Affreyd is an yll disease, and commethe of great labour and rydynge faste with a contynuall sweate, and thanne sodeynly to take a great colde, his legges wyll  
4 be styffe, and his skyn wyll stycke fast to his sydes, and may be well cured.

## 105. Nauylgall.

Navel-gall.

¶ Nauylgall is a soraunce, hurte with a saddle, or with a buckle of a croper, or suche other, in the myddes of the backe, and maye be lyghtely cured.

## 106. A spauen.

Spavin.

¶ A spauen is an yll sorance, whervppon he wyll halte, and specyally in the begynnyng, and appereth on the hynder legges within, and agaynste the ioynthe, and it wyll  
4 be a lyttell swollen and harde. And some horses haue

through the spauen, and appereth bothe within and without,  
and those be yll to be cured.

107. **A courbe.**

¶ A courbe is an yll sorance, and maketh a horse to halte A curb.  
sore, and appereth vpon the hynder legges streight  
behynde, vnder the camborell place, and a lyttell benethe  
4 the spauen, and wyl be swollen, and yll to cure, if it growe  
longe vpon hym.

108. **The stringe-halte.**

[Fol. 484.]

¶ The stryng-halte is an yl disease, and maketh hym String-halt.  
to twyche vp his legge sodeynly, and maketh hym to  
halte, and cometh ofte with a colde, and doth not appere  
4 outwarde.

109. **Enterfyre.**

¶ Enterfyre is a sorance, and cometh of yll shoyng, and Enterfire.  
appereth ofte both behynde and before, betwene the  
fete agaynst the fetelockes; there is no remedy but good  
4 showyng.

110. **Myllettes.**

¶ Myllettes is an yll sorance, and appereth in the fete- Millets.  
lockes behynde, & causeth the heare to sheede thre or  
foure inches of length, and a quarter of an inche in brede,  
4 lyke as it were bare; and yll to cure but it maye be per-  
ceiued, and specially in wynter tyme.

111. **The peynes.**

¶ The peynes is an yll soraunce and appereth in the fete- 'The peynes.'  
lockes, and wyl swel in wynter tyme, and oyse of water,  
and the heare wyl stare and be thyn, and yl to cure,  
4 but it wyl be seen in winter.

**112. *The disease called Cratches.*****112. Cratches.**

Cratches. ¶ Cratches is a soraunce that wyll cause a horse to halt, and commeth of yll kepynge, and appereth in the pasturnes, lyke as the skyn were cut ouerthwarte, that a  
 [Fol. 49.] 4 man maye laye a white strawe, and it is sone cured.

**113. Atteynt.**

Attaint. ¶ Atteynt is a sorance, that commeth of an ouer-rechyng, yf it be before; and if it be behynde, it is of the tredynge of an other horse, the whiche maye be soone  
 4 cured.

**114. Grauelynge.**

Gravelling. ¶ Grauelynge is a hurte, that wyll make a horse to halte, and commethe of grauell and lyttel stones, that goth in betwene the shough and the herte of the fote, and is sone  
 4 mended.

**115. A-cloyed.**

A-cloyed. ¶ A-cloyde is an hurte, that commeth of yll shoyng, whan a smyth dryueth a nayle in-to the quycke; the which wyll make hym to halt, and is sone cured.

**116. The scabbe.**

The scab. ¶ There is a disease amonge horses that is called the scabbe, and it is a skorfe in dyuers places of his body. And it commeth of a pouertie and yll kepyng; and is  
 4 most commonly amonge olde horses, and wyll dye thervpon, and maye be well cured.

**117. Lowsy.**

Lousy horses. ¶ There be horses that wyll be lowsy, and it cometh of pouertie, colde, and yll kepyng; and it is moste com-

monly amonge yonge horses, and menne take lyttell  
 4 hede vnto it; and yet they wyll dye thervppon, and it [Fol. 49b.]  
 maye be soone cured.

118. *Wartes.*

¶ There is a defaute in a horse, that is neyther sorance, <sup>Want of warts behind.</sup>  
 hurte, nor disease, and that is, if a horse wante wartes  
 behynde, benethe the spauen-place, for then he is noo  
 4 chapmannes ware, if he be wylde; but if he be tame,  
 and haue ben rydden vpon, than *Caveat emptor*, beware <sup>Caveat emptor.</sup>  
 the byer, for the byer hath bothe his eyen to se, and  
 his handes to handell. It is a sayenge, that suche a  
 8 horse shoulde dye sodeynely, whan he hath lyued as  
 many yeres as the mone was dayes olde, at suche tyme  
 as he was foled.

119. *The sayinge of the frenche-man.*

¶ These be soraunce, hurtes, dyseases, that be nowe  
 comme to my mynde; and the frenche-man saythe, *Mort* <sup>A French proverb.</sup>  
*de langue et de eschine Sount maladyes saunce medicine.*  
 4 The mournynge of the tongue, and of the chyne, are  
 diseases without remedy or medicyne. And ferther he  
 saythe, *Gardes bien, que il soyt cler de vieu, Que tout* <sup>Another French proverb.</sup>  
*trauayle ne soit perdue*: Be wel ware that he be clere  
 8 of syghte, lest all thy trauayle or iourneye be lost or  
 nyght. And bycause I am a horse-master my-selfe, I  
 haue shewed you the soraunce and dyseases of horses, to [Fol. 50.]  
 the entent that men shulde beware, & take good hede  
 12 what horses they bye of me or of any other. Howe  
 be it I saye to my customers, and those that bye any  
 horses of me, and euer they wil trust any hors-master  
 or corser whyle they lyue, truste me. <sup>If ever you trust a horse-master, trust me.</sup>

120. ¶ The diuersitie bytwene a horse-mayster,  
a corser, and a horse-leche.

A horse-  
master buys  
wild colts  
and breeds  
them and  
breaks them  
in.

A courser  
merely deals  
in them.

A horse-  
leech cures  
their  
diseases.  
Add to these  
an apothecary,  
and  
you have 4  
rogues.

A Horse-mayster is he, that bieth wylde horses, or coltes, and bredeth theym, and selleth theym agayne wylde, or breaketh parte of them, and maketh theym  
4 tame, and than selleth them. A corser is he, that byeth all rydden horses, and selleth them agayne. The horse-leche is he, that takethe vppon hym to cure and mende all maner of diseases and soraunce that horses haue.  
8 And whan these three be mette, if ye hadde a potycarye to make the fourthe, ye myghte haue suche foure, that it were harde to truste the best of them. It were also conuenient to shew medicynes and remedies for al these  
12 diseases and sorances; but it wolde be to longe a processe at this tyme, for it wolde be as moche as halfe this boke. And I haue not the perfyte connyng, nor the experyence, to shewe medicynes and remedies for  
16 theym all. And also the horse-leches wolde not be content therwith, for it myghte fortune to hurte or hynder theyr occupation.

[Fol. 50b.]

121. ¶ Of swyne.

Whoso hath  
sheep, swine  
and bees,  
shall surely  
thrive.

Have only  
boars and  
sows; no  
hogs.

Nowe thou husbande, that haste bothe horses and mares, beastes and shepe: It were necessary also, that thou haue bothe swyne and bees; for it is an olde  
4 sayinge: he that hath bothe shepe, swyne, and bees, slepe he, wake he, he maye thryue. And that sayenge is, bycause that they be those thinges that moste profyt riseth of in the shortest space, with least coste. Than  
8 se howe manye swyne thou art able to kepe; let them be bores and sowes all, and no hogges. And if thou be able to rere vi pigges a yere, than let two of them be bores, and foure of them sowes, and so to contynue  
12 after the rate. For a bore will haue as lyttell kepyng

as a hogge, and is moche better than a hogge, and more  
meate on hym and is ready at all tymes to eate in the  
wynter season, and to be layde in souse. And a sowe, er  
16 she be able to kyl, shall bryng forth as many pyggs or  
moo, as she is worth ; and her bodye is neuer the worse,  
and wyll be as good baken as a hogge, and as lyttell  
kepyng, but at suche tyme as she hath pygges. And if [Fol. 51.]  
20 thy sowe haue moo pygges than thou wilt rere, sel them,  
or eate them, & rere those pigges that come about lentin-  
time, specyally the begynnyng of somer, for they can-not  
be rered in winter, for cold, without great coste.

A boar is  
better than  
a hog.

Rear pigs in  
spring and  
early  
summer.

122.  *Of bees.*

Of bees is lyttell charge but good attendaunce ; at the  
tyme that they shall cast the swarme, it is conuenient, that  
the hyue be set in a garden, or an orchyarde, where as  
4 they maye be kepte from the northe wynde, and the  
mouthe of the hyue towarde the sonne. And in June  
and July they do most commonlye caste, and they  
wolde haue some lowe trees nyghe vnto them before  
8 the hyue that the swarme maye lyght vpon ; and whan  
the swarme is knytte, take a hyue, and splente it within  
with thre or foure splentes, that the bees maye knytte  
theyr combes therto ; and annoynte the splentes, and  
12 the sydes of the hyue, with a lyttell honye. And if thou  
haue no honye, take swete creame, and than set a stole  
or a forme nyghe vnto the swarme, and laye a clene  
washen shete vppon the stole, and thanne holde the  
16 smalle ende of the hyue downewarde and shake the [Fol. 51b.]  
bees in-to the hyue, and shortly sette it vppon the stole,  
and turne vppe the corners of the shete ouer the hyue,  
and to leue one place open, that the bees may come in  
20 and out : but thou mayst not fight nor stryue with theym  
for noo cause ; and to laye nettyls vppon the bowes,  
where as they were knytte, to dryue them from that

Put the bee-  
hive in a  
garden or  
orchard.

They com-  
monly  
swarm in  
June or  
July.

How to  
take a  
swarm.

Never strive  
with bees.

Leave a hole  
for the bees  
to go in and  
out.

Set the hive  
on stakes,  
at least two  
feet from  
ground.

[Fol. 52.]

If a hive is  
fed on honey,  
stop the  
mouth of it.

Drones.

It is said,  
the drone  
hath lost her  
sting.

- place; and soo watche them all that daye, that they go  
 24 not away; and at nyght, whan al be goone vp into the  
 hyue, take it away and set it where it shall stande, and  
 take away thy shete, and haue claye tempered to laye  
 aboute it vppon the borde or stone, where it shall stande,  
 28 that noo wynde comme in, but the borde is better and  
 warmer. And to leaue an hole open on the south syde,  
 of three inches brode, and an inche of heyghte, for the  
 bees to come in and out. And than to make a couerynge  
 32 of wheate-strawe or rye-strawe, to couer and house the  
 hyue about, and set the hyue two fote or more from the  
 erthe vpon stakes, soo that a mouse cannot come to it,  
 and also neyther beastes nor swyne. And if a swarme be  
 36 caste late in the yere, they wolde be fedde with honnye in  
 wynter, and layde vppon a thynne narowe borde, or a  
 thynne sclatte or leade; put it into the hyue, and an other  
 thynne borde wolde be set before euery hyues mouthe,  
 40 that no winde come in; and to haue foure or fyue  
 lyttell nyckes made on the nether syde, that a bee maye  
 comme out or go in, and so fastened, that the wynde  
 blowe it not downe, and to take it vp whan he wyll.  
 44 And that hyue that is fedde, to stoppe the mouthe cleane,  
 that other bees come not in; for if they doo, they wyll  
 fyghte, and kyll eche other. And beware, that noo  
 waspes come in-to the hyue, for they wyll kyl the bees,  
 48 and eate the honny. And also there is a bee called a  
 drone, and she is greater than an other bee, and they wyll  
 eate the honny, and gather nothyng: and therfore they  
 wolde be kylde, and it is a sayenge, that she hath loste  
 52 her styng, and than she wyl not not labour as the other  
 do.

### 123. ¶ Howe to kepe beastes and other cattell.

How to  
keep beasts.

If a housbande shall kepe cattell well to his profytte,  
 he must haue seuerall closes and pastures to put his cattell

- in, the which wolde be wel quickesetted, diked, &  
 4 hedged, that he maye seuer the byggeste cattell frome  
 the weykeste at his pleasure, and specyallye in wynter- [Fol. 52<sup>b</sup>.]  
 tyme, whan they shall be fodered. And though a man  
 be but a farmer, and shall haue his farme xx yeres, it  
 8 is lesse coste for hym, and more profyte, to quyckeset, It is best to  
 quickset,  
 ditch, and  
 hedge cattle  
 in.  
 dyche, and hedge, than to haue his cattell goo before the  
 herdeman. For let the housbande spende in thre yeres  
 as moche money as the keypyng of his beastes, swyne,  
 12 and shepe doth cost him in iii yeres, than alwaye after,  
 he shal haue all maner of cattell with the tenthe parte of  
 the coste, and the beastes shal lyke moche better. And  
 by this reason. The herdeman wyll haue for euery beast  
 16 .ii.d. a quarter, or there aboute: And the swyneherde A herdman  
 expects 2d.  
 per beast;  
 and a swine-  
 herd 1d.  
 wyll haue for euery swyne .i.d. at the leaste. Than he  
 must haue a shepeherde of his owne, or elles he shal  
 neuer thryue. Than reken meate, drinke, and wages  
 20 for his shepeherde, the herdman's hyre, and the swyne-  
 herdes hyre, these charges wyll double his rent or nyghe  
 it, excepte his farme be aboute .xl. s. by yere. Nowe see  
 what his charges be in .iii. yeres, lette hym ware as moche  
 24 money in quickesettinge, dychyng, and hedgyng, and  
 in thre yeres he shall be discharged for euermore, and  
 moche of this labour he and his seruantes maye do with  
 theyr owne handes, and saue moche money. And than  
 28 hath he euery fyelde in seueraltye. And by the assente [Fol. 53.]  
 of the lordes and tenantes, euery neyghbour may ex-  
 chaunge landes with other. And than shall his farme be  
 twyse so good in profytte to the tenante as it was before,  
 32 and as moche lande kepte in tyllage; and than shall not  
 the ryche man ouer-eate the poore man with his cattell,  
 and the fourth parte of heye and strawe shall serue his  
 cattell better in a pasture, than .iiii. tymes soo moche wyll  
 36 do in a house, and lesse attendaunce, and better the  
 cattell shall lyke, and the chiefe sauegarde for corne bothe  
 daye and nyghte that can be.

It is better  
 to spend the  
 money on  
 hedges.

You will  
 save in hay  
 and straw.

## 124. ¶ To get settes and set them.

- And if thou haue pastures, thou muste nedes haue quyksettynge, dychynge and plasshyng. Whan it is grene, and commeth to age, than gette thy quyksettes
- Quickset hedges.** 4 in the woode-countreie, and let theym be of whyte-thorne and crabtree, for they be beste; holye and hasell be good. And if thou dwelle in the playne-countreie, than mayste thou gete bothe asshe, oke, and elme, for those wyll
- Set young oaks and ashes.** 8 encrease moche woode in shorte space. And set thy oke-settes and the asshe .x. or .xii fote a-sonder, and cut them as thou dost thy other settes, and couer theym ouer with thornes a lyttell, that shepe and cattell eate them not.
- [Fol. 53b.]**
- Clear away the weeds.** 12 And also wede them clene in mydsomer mone or soone after: for the wedes, if they ouer growe, wyl kyl the settes. But get no blacke-thorne for nothyng, for that wyl grow outwarde into the pasture, and doth moch hurte in the
- Never have blackthorn.** 16 grasse, and tearyng the woll of the shepe. It is good tyme to set quyksettes, fro that tyme the leaues be fallen, vnto oure lady daye in lente; and thy sandye grounde or grauell set fyrste, than clay grounde, and than meane
- When to set quicksets.** 20 grounde, and the medowe or marreys grounde laste, for the sande and grauell wyll drye anone, and than the quykset wyll take no rote, excepte it haue greate weate; for the muldes wyll lye lose, if it be dyched in February or
- How to set quicksets.** 24 marche, and lyke wise clay ground. And make thy settes longe ynough, that they maye be set depe ynough in the erth: for than they wyll growe the better. And to stande halfe a foote and more aboute the erthe, that they maye
- 28 sprynge oute in many braunches. And than to take a lyne, and sette it there as thou wylte haue thy hedge, and to make a trenche after thy lyne, and to pare awaye the grasse there the quyksettes shal be set, and caste it by,
- Make a straight trench.** 32 where the erthe of the dyche shall lye, and dygge vp the muldes a spade-graffe depe, and to put in thy settes, and dygge up more molde, and laye vppon that set, and so
- [Fol. 54.]**

peruse, tyll thou haue set all thy settes, and let them lene  
 36 towarde the dyche. And a foote from that make thy dyche. For if thou make it to nyghe thy settes, the  
Have the ditch a foot from the hedge.  
 water maye fortune to weare the grounde on that syde,  
 and cause thy settes to fall downe.

## 125. ¶ To make a dyche.

If thou make thy dyche foure foote brode, than wolde  
 it be two foote and a halfe depe. And if it be .v. fote  
 brode, than .iii. fote depe, and so accordynge; and if it  
 4 be fyue fote brod, than it wolde be double sette, and the  
 rather it wolde fence it-selfe, and the lower hedge wyll  
 serue.

## 126. ¶ To make a hedge.

Thou muste gette the stakes of the harte of oke, for  
 those be best; crabtre, blacke-thorne, and ellore be good.  
Stakes for a hedge.  
 Reed wethy is beste in marsshe grounde; asshe, maple,  
 4 hasel, and whyte-thorne wyl serue for a time. And set  
 thy stakes within .ii. foote and a halfe together, excepte  
[Fol. 54b.]  
 thou haue very good edderynge, and longe, to bynde with.  
 And if it be double eddered, it is moch the better, and  
 8 gret strength to the hedge, and moche lenger it wil last.  
 And lay thy small trouse or thornes, that thou hedgeste  
 withall, ouer thy quickesettes, that shepe do not eate the  
 sprynge nor buddes of thy settes. Let thy stakes be well  
 12 dryuen, that the poynt take the hard erthe. And whan  
Drive the stakes firmly.  
 thou haste made thy hedge, and eddered it well, than take  
 thy mall agayne, and dryue downe thy edderinges, and  
 also thy stakes by and by. For with the wyndynge of the  
 16 edderynges thou doost leuse thy stakes; and therefore  
 they muste nedes be dryuen newe, and hardened agayne,  
 and the better the stake wil be dryuen, whan he is wel  
 bounden.  
Wind in the ethers.  
Then drive the stakes again.

## 127. ¶ To plasshe or pleche a hedge.

How to  
pleach a  
hedge.

Cut the sets  
more than  
half  
through,  
[Fol. 55.]  
and bend  
them down,  
but not too  
low.

How to  
pleach an  
older hedge.

How to  
pleacha very  
old hedge.

[Fol. 55b.]

- If the hedge be of .x. or .xii. yeres growing sythe it was first set, thanne take a sharpe hachet, or a handbyll, and cutte the settes in a playne place, nyghe vnto the
- 4 erthe, the more halue a-sonder; and bende it downe towarde the erthe, and wrappe and wynde theym together, but alwaye se that the toppe lye hyer than the rote a good quantytie, for elles the sappe wyll not renne
- 8 in-to the toppe kyndely, but in processe the toppe wyll dye; and than set a lyttel hedge on the backe-syde, and it shall nede noo more mendyngge manye yeres after. And if the hedge be of .xx. .xxiiii. or .xxx. yere of age,
- 12 sythe it was fyrst sette, than wynde in first al the nethermoste bowes, and wynde them together, and than cutte the settes in a playne place a lyttel from the erth, the more halfe a-sonder, and to lette it slaue downewarde,
- 16 and not vpwarde, for dyuerse causes: than wynde the bowes and braunches therof in-to the hedge, and at euery two fote, or .iii. fote, to leaue one set growyng not plashed; and the toppe to be cut of foure fote hygh,
- 20 or there-about, to stande as a stake, if there be any suche, or els to set an-other, and to wynd the other that be pleched about them. And if the bowes wyll not lye playne in the hedge, than cut it the more halfe
- 24 a-sonder, and bynd it to the hedge, and than shal he not nede for to mende the hedge, but in fewe places, .xx. yeres after or more. And if the hedge be olde, and be great stubbes or trees, and thyn in the bottome, that
- 28 beastes may go vnder or betwene the trees: thanne take a sharpe axe, and cutte the trees or stubbes, that growe a fote from the erthe, or there-about, in a plaine place, within an inche or two inches of the side, and let
- 32 them slaue downward, as I sayd before, and let the toppe of the tree lye ouer the rote of an other tree, and to pleche downe the bowes of the same tree, to stoppe

the holowe places. And if all the holowe and voyde  
 36 places wyl not be fylled and stopped, than scoure the  
 olde dyche, and cast it vp newe, and to fyll with erthe all  
 the voyde places. And if soo be these trees wyl not  
 reche in euerye place to make a sufficyent defence, than  
 40 double quicke-set it, & diche it new in euery place that  
 is nedeful, and set a hedge thervpon, and to ouerlay the  
 settes, for eatynge of shepe or other cattel.

## 128. ¶ To mende a hye-waye.

Me semeth, it is necessarye to shewe mine opinion, How to  
mend a  
road.  
 howe an hye-way shulde be amended. And fyrste and  
 pryncypally, se that there be noo water standynge in the  
 4 hye-waye, but that it be alwaye currante and rennyng, Let no  
water stand  
on it.  
 nor haue none abydynge more in one place thanne in an-  
 other. And in somer, whan the water is dryed vp, than  
 to get grauell, and to fyll vp euery lowe place, and to  
 8 make theym euen, somewhat dyscendynge or currante, [Fol. 56.]  
 one waye or other; and if there be noo grauell nor  
 stones to gette, yet fyll vp with erthe in the begyn- Fill up the  
holes with  
gravel.  
 nyng of somer, that it maye be well hardened with  
 12 caryage and treadynge vppon, and it shall be well  
 amended, if the water maye passe away from it; the  
 whiche wolde be well consydered, and specially aboute  
 London, where as they make moche more coste than  
 16 nedeth; for there they dyche theyr hye-wayes on bothe  
 sydes, and fyll vp the holowe and lowe places with erthe,  
 and than they caste and laye grauell alofte. And whan  
 a greatte rayne or water commeth, and synketh thorowe  
 20 the grauell, and commeth to the erthe, than the erthe  
 swelleth and bolneth and waxeth softe, and with  
 treadynge, and specyally with caryage, the grauell  
 synketh, and gothe downewarde as his nature and kynde  
 24 requyreth, and than it is in maner of a quicke-sande, Then the  
gravel sinks,  
and the road  
is like a  
quicksand.  
 that harde it is for any thyng to goo ouer. But yf they

They should  
use gravel  
only. 28 wolde make no dyche in sommertyme, whan the water is  
 dried vp, that a man may se all the holowe and lowe places,  
 [Fol. 56b.] than to cary grauel, and fyl it vp as hygh as the other  
 knolles be; than wold it not bolne ne swell, nor be no  
 quykke-sande, and euery man may go beside the hie-way  
 32 with theyr cariage at theyr pleasure. And this me semeth  
 is lesse coste, and lenger wyll last with a lyttell mendynge  
 whan nede requyreth. Therfore me thynketh, yf this  
 were well loked vpon, it shuld be bothe good and  
 necessarye for that purpose: for soo haue I seen done in  
 36 other places, where as I haue ben, &c.

This  
should be  
looked to.

### 129. ¶ To remoue and set trees.

How to  
remove and  
set trees.

Cut off some  
of the  
boughs.

[Fol. 51; So  
misnumber-  
ed all the  
way to the  
end. We  
may call it  
51\*.]

If thou wylte remoue and sette trees, get as manye  
 rotes with them as thou canste, and breake them not, nor  
 bryse theym, by thy wyll. And if there be any rote  
 4 broken and sore brused, cut it of harde by, there as it is  
 brused, with a sharpe hatchet, elles that roote wyll dye.  
 And if it be asshe, elme, or oke, cut of all the bowes  
 cleane, and saue the toppe hole. For if thou make hym  
 8 ryche of bowes, thou makeste hym poore of thryfte, for  
 two causes. The bowes causeth theym to shake with  
 wynde, and to leuse the rotes. Also he can-not be  
 soo cleane gete, but some of the rotes muste nedes be cut,  
 12 and than there wyll not come soo moche sappe and  
 moystenenes to the bowes, as there dyd before. And if  
 the tree be very longe, cut of the top, two or thre  
 yardes. And if it be an apple-tree, or peare-tree, or  
 16 suche other as beareth fruyte, than cut away all the  
 water-bowes, and the small bowes, that the pryncipall  
 bowes may haue the more sap. And if ye make a  
 marke, which syde of the tree standeth toward the  
 20 sonne, that he may be set so agayne, it is soo moche  
 the better.

## 130. ¶ Trees to be set without rotes and growe.

There be trees wil be set without rotes, and growe well, and sprynge rotes of them-selfe. And those be dyuerse apple-trees, that haue knottes in the bowes, as  
 4 casses, or wydes, and suche other, that wyll growe on slauynges, and lykewyse popeler and wethy: and they must be cut cleane besyde the tree, that they growe on, and the toppe cut cleane of .viii. or .x. fote of lengthe,  
 8 and all the bowes betwene, and to be set a fote depe or in the erthe, in good grounde. And ye shall vnderstande, that there be foure maner of wethyes, that is to say, white wethye, blacke wethy, reed wethy, and  
 12 osyerde wethy. Whyte wethye wyll growe vppon drye grounde, yf it be sette in the begynnyge of wynter, and wyll not growe in marsshe grounde; blacke wethy wyll growe better on marshe grounde, and redde wethy in  
 16 lyke maner: and osyerde wethy wyll growe beste in water and moyste grounde. And they be trees that wyll soone be nourysshed, and they wyll beare moche woodde, and they wolde be cropped euery .vii. or .viii. yere or els they  
 20 wyll dye; but they maye not be cropped in sappe-tyme, nor no tree els. And in many places, bothe the lordes, freeholders, and tenauntes at wyll, sette suche wethyes, and popelers, in marsshe grounde, to nourysshe wodde, &c.

Some trees  
can be set  
without  
roots.

Poplar and  
withy.

Four  
withies, viz.  
white,  
black, red,  
and osier.

[Fol. 51<sup>ob</sup>.]

Osiers will  
grow in  
water.

Crop them  
euery seven  
years.

## 131. ¶ To fell wodde for housholde, or to sell.

If thou haue any woddes to felle, for thy householde to brenne, or to sell, than fell the vnder-wodde fyrste in wynter, that thy cattell or beastes maye eate and brouse  
 4 the toppes, and to fell noo more on a daye but as moche as the beastes wyll eate the same daye, or on the morowe after. And as soone as it is well eaten or broused, thanne kydde it, and set them on the endes, and that  
 8 wyll saue the bandes from rottynge, and they shall be

Fell under-  
wood in  
winter; let  
the cattle  
browze on it.

Make it up  
into faggots.

[Fol. 52\*.]

How to  
stack  
faggots.

the lyghter to carye, and the better wyll they brenne,  
and lie in lesse rowme. And whan thou shalt bryng them  
home to make a stacke of them, set the nethermoste  
12 course vpon the endes, and the seconde course flat vppon  
the syde, and the endes vpwarde, and the thyrde cou[r]se  
flatte on the syde ouerthwart the other. And so to  
peruse them, tyll thou haue layd all vp. And whan thou  
16 shalte brenne them, take the ouermoste fyrste.

## 132. ¶ To shrede, lop, or croppe trees.

How to  
shred, lop,  
and crop  
trees.Do not head  
trees too  
low.[Fol. 52\*<sup>b</sup>.]Trees grow  
only to a  
certain  
height; then  
they spread.

If thou haue any trees to shrede, loppe, or croppe  
for the fyre-wodde, croppe them in wynter, that thy  
beastes maye eate the brouse, and the mosse of the  
4 bowes, and also the yues. And whanne they be broused  
and eaten, dresse the wodde, and bowe it clene, and  
cutte it at every byghte, and rere the greatte wodde to  
the tree, and kydde the smal bowes, and set them on  
8 ende. And if thou shalte not haue sufficyent wodde,  
excepte thou heed thy trees, and cut of the toppes, than  
heed theym thre or foure fote aboue any tymber: and  
if it be noo tymbre tree, but a shaken tree, or a hedge-  
12 rote full of knottes, than heed hym thyrty foote hyghe,  
or twenty at the leaste, for soo ferre he wyll beare  
plentye of woode and bowes, and moche more, thanne  
if he were not heeded. For a tree hath a propertye to  
16 growe to a certayne heyght, and whan he commeth to  
that heyghte, he standeth styll, and groweth noo hyer,  
but in brede; and in conclusion the toppe wyll dye  
and decrease, and the body thryue. And if a tree be  
20 heeded, and vsed to be lopped and cropped at euerye  
.xii. or .xvi. yeres ende, or there-about, it wyll beare  
moche more woode, by processe of time, than if it were  
not cropped, and moche more profyte to the owner.

133. ¶ **Howe a man shoulde shrede, loppe, or croppe trees.**

- It is the comon gyse, to begynne at the top of the tree, whan he shall be shred or cropped, bycause eche bough shulde lye vppon other whan they shall fal, so  
 4 that the weight of the bowes shall cause theym to be the rather cut downe. But that is not beste, for that causeth the bowes to slaue downe the nether parte, and pulleth awaye the barke from the bodye of the tree,  
 8 the whiche wyll cause the tree to be holowe in that place in tyme commynge, and many tymes it shall hynder hym. And therfore lette hym begynne at the nether-  
 12 to cut the boughe on bothe sydes, a fote or two foote from the bodye of the tree. And specially cut it more on the nether syde, than on the ouer syde, soo that the boughe fall not streyght downe, but turne on the  
 16 syde, and than shall it not slaue nor breke no barke. And euery boughe wil haue a newe heed, and beare moche more woode; and by thy wyll, without thou must nedes do it, crop not thy tree, nor specyallye heed hym,  
 20 whan the wynde standeth in the northe, or in the eest. And beware, that thou croppe hym not, nor heed hym (specially) in sappe-tyme, for than wyll he dye within fewe yeres after, if it be an oke.

In shredding trees, some men begin at the top.

It is not the best way.

[Fol. 53<sup>o</sup>.]

Never crop or head a tree with a north or east wind,

nor in sappe-tyme.

134. ¶ **To sell woode or tymber.**

- If thou haue any woode to selle, I aduyse the, retayle it thy-selfe, if thou mayste attende vppon it: and if not, thanne to cause thy baylye, or somme other wyse or  
 4 dyscrete man, to do it for the. And if it be small wode, to kydde it, and sel it by the hundredes, or by the thousandes. And if there be assches in it, to sell the smalle assches to cowpers for garches, and the gret assches to  
 8 whele-wryghtes, and the meane assches to plowe-wrightes,

Retail the wood yourself.

If small, sell in faggots.

[Fol. 53<sup>o</sup>.]

Fell oaks  
and sell  
them.

and the crabbe-trees to myllers, to make cogges and  
ronges. And if there be any okes, bothe gret and smal,  
fel them, and pyl them, and sel the barke by it-selfe; and  
12 than sorte the trees, the polles by them-selfe, the myddel  
sorte<sup>1</sup> by them-selfe, and the greatestt by them-selfe, &  
than sel them by scores, or halfe scores, or .C. as thou  
maist, and to fel it hard by the erth, for i. fote next  
16 vnto the erth is worthe .ii. fote in the top; and to cut  
thy tymber longe ynoughe, that thou leue no timber in  
the toppe. And to sell the toppes as they lye a greatte,  
or elles dresse them & sel the great wodde by it-selfe,  
20 & the kyd-wodde by it-selfe, and to fal the vnder-wode  
fyrst at any tyme between Martilmas and holyrode-day.

Ash-trees.

And al the ashes, bytwene Martylmasse and Candelmas,  
and all okes, as soon as they wyl pyl, vntyl May be done,  
24 and not after. Peraenture the greatestt man hath not  
the beste prouisyon. And that is bycause the seruauentes  
wyll not enfourme hym these wayes, and also may fortune  
they wold bye suche woodes theym-selfe, or be partener  
28 of the same and to auyse his lorde to sel them. It is not  
conuenient that the salesman, that selleth the wod, shuld  
be partener with the bier.

Selling  
wood  
requires  
care.

[Fol. 54\*.]

### 135. ¶ To kepe sprynge-wodde.

Of planta-  
tions or  
'spring-  
wood.'

In the wynter before that thou wilt fel thy wodde, make  
a good and a sure hedge, that no maner of cattel can get  
in. And as shortly as it is fallen, let it be caryed away, or  
4 the sprynge come vp, for els the cattell, that doth cary  
the wodde, wyll eate the sprynge: and whan the top is  
eaten, or broken, it is a great lette, hurte, and hynderaunce  
of the goodnes of the sprynge; for than where it is eaten,  
8 it burges oute of many braunches, and not soo fayre as  
the fyrst wolde haue ben. A parke is best kept, where  
there is neyther man, dogge, nor foure-foted beast therin,

<sup>1</sup> *Misprinted shorte.*

except dere. And so is a spryng beste kepte, where  
 12 there is neyther manne nor foure-foted beastes within the hedge. But if there be moche grasse, and thou were If there is much grass there, put in only calves and colts.  
 lothe to lose it, than put in calues, newly wained and  
 taken from theyr dammes, and also waynyng coltes, or  
 16 horses not paste a yere of age: and let thy calues be  
 taken away at Maye; the coltes may go lenger for eating  
 of any wodde; but there is ieoperdy bothe for calues,  
 foles, and coltes, for tyckes or for beinge lowsy, the  
 20 whiche wyl kyl them, if they be not taken hede vnto.  
 And .vii. yeres is the lest that it wil saue it-selfe, but  
 .x. yeres is best. And than the vnder bowes wolde be [Fol. 54<sup>b</sup>.]  
 cutte awaye, and made kyddes therof, and the other  
 24 wyll growe moche the better and faster. And if the  
 vnder bowes be not cutte awaye, they wyll dye, and than Cut away the under-wood.  
 they be loste, and greatte hurte to the spryng, for they  
 take awaye the sappe, that shoulde cause the spryng to  
 28 growe better.

### 136. ¶ Necessary thynges belongynge to graffynge.

It is necessarye, profytable, and also a pleasure, Pears, apples, cherries, filberts, bullace, damsons, &c.  
 to a housbande, to haue peares, wardens, and apples of  
 dyuerse sortes. And also cheryes, filberdes, bulleys,  
 4 dampsons, plummes, walnuttes, and suche other. And  
 therefore it is conuenient to lerne howe thou shalte  
 graffe. Than it is to be knowen what thynges thou  
 must haue to graffe withall. Thou muste haue a graf- A grafting-saw.  
 8 fynge-sawe, the whiche wolde be very thynne, and  
 thycke-tothed; and bycause it is thynne, it wyll cut the  
 narrower kyrfe, and the cleaner, for brusynge of the barke.  
 And therefore it is sette in a compasse pece of yren,  
 12 syxe inches of, to make it styffe and bygge. Thou  
 muste haue also a graffynge-knyfe, an inche brode, with Grafting-knife.  
 a thycke backe, to cleue the stocke with-all. And also [Fol. 55<sup>a</sup>.]  
 a mallet, to dryue the knyfe and thy wedge in-to the Mallet, and

sharp small 16 tree: and a sharpe knife, to pare the stockes heed, and  
knives.  
Two 17 an other sharpe knyfe, to cutte the graffe cleane. And  
wedges. 18 also thou muste haue two wedges of harde wood, or elles  
of yren, a longe small one for a small stocke, and broder  
20 for a bygger stocke, to open the stocke, whan it is clouen  
and pared: and also good tough claye and mosse, and  
Clay, moss, 21 also bastes or pyllynge of wethy or elme, to bynde them  
and bast. 22 with, &c.

## 137. ¶ What fruite shuld be fyrste grafted.

Graft peares 23 Peares and wardens wolde be grafted before any maner  
before of apples, bycause the sappe commeth sooner and rather  
apples. 24 in-to the peare-tree and warden-tree, thanne in-to the  
apple-tree. And after saynt Valentynes daye, it is tyme  
Graft from 25 to graffe both peares and wardens, tyll Marche be comen,  
Feb. 14 to and thanne to graffe appels to our lady daye. And than  
March 25. 26 graffe that that is gette of an olde apple-tree fyrste, for  
that wyll budde before the graffe get of a yonge apple-  
tree late grafted. And a peare or a warden wolde be  
grafted in a pyrrre-stocke; and if thou canst get none,  
[Fol. 55\* b.] 27 than graffe it in a crabbe-tree stocke, and it wyll do well:  
and some men graffe theym in a whyte-thorne, and than  
it wyll be the more harder and stonye. And for all  
A crab- 28 maner of appels, the crabtree stocke is beste.  
stock is best  
for apples.

## 138. ¶ Howe to graffe.

Select the 29 Thou muste get thy graffes of the fayrest lances, that  
graft. 30 thou canste fynde on the tree, and see that it haue a good  
knotte or ioynte, and an euen. Than take thy sawe, and  
Saw the 31 sawe in-to thy c[r]abbetree, in a fayre playne place, pare it  
crab-tree, 32 euen with thy knyfe, and thanne cleaue the stocke with  
thy greatte knyfe and thy mallet, and set in a wedge, and  
cleave and 33 open the stocke, accordynge to the thyckenesse of thy  
open the 34 graffe; thanne take thy smalle sharpe knyfe, and cutte  
stock; 35 the graffe on bothe sydes in the ioynte, but passe not the

- myddes therof for nothyng, and let the inner syde, that shall be set in-to the stocke, be a lyttel thynner than the
- 12 vtter syde, and the nether poynte of the graffe the thynner: than proferre thy graffe in-to the stocke; and then put the graft into the stock.
- if it go not close, than cut the graffe or the stocke, tyll they close cleane, that thou canste not put the edge of
- 16 thy knyfe on neyther syde betwene the stocke and the [Fol. 56\*.] graffe, and sette them so that the toppes of the graffe bende a lyttell outewarde, and see that the wodde of the graffe be set mete with the wodde of the stocke, and the
- 20 sappe of the stocke maye renne streyght and euen with the sappe of the graffe. For the barke of the graffe is The bark of the graft is thinner than that of the stock. neuer soo thicke as the barke of the stocke. And therfore thou mayste not sette the barks mete on the vtter
- 24 syde, but on the inner syde: than pulle awaye thy wedge, and it wyl stande moche faster. Than take toughe cleye, lyke marley, and ley it vpon the stocke-heed, and with thy fynger laye it close vnto the graffe, and a lyttel vnder
- 28 the heed, to kepe it moyst, and that no wynde come into the stocke at the cleauynge. Than take mosse, and laye Cover with moss, and bind with bast. thervpon, for chynynge of the claye: than take a baste of whyte wethy or elme, or halfe a bryer, and bynd the
- 32 mosse, the clay, and the graffe together, but be well ware, that thou breake not thy graffe, neyther in the clayenge, nor in the byndynge; and thou muste set some-thinge by the graffe, that crowes, nor byrdes do not lyght vpon
- 36 thy graffe, for if they do, they wil breake hym, &c.

**139. ¶ To graffe bytwene the barke and the tree.** [Fol. 56\**b*.]

- There is an other maner of graftinge than this, and soner done, & soner to growe: but it is more ieoperdy for winde whan it begynneth to growe. Thou muste sawe
- 4 thy stocke, and pare the heed therof, as thou diddest Another way of grafting. before, but cleue it not: than take thy graffe, and cut it in the ioynt to the myddes, and make the tenaunte therof

halfe an inche longe or a lyttell more, all on the one syde,  
 8 and pare the barke awaye a lyttel at the poynt on the  
 other syde: than thou muste haue made redy a ponch of  
 harde wood, with a stop and a tenaunte on the one syde,  
 lyke to the tenaunte of the graffe. Than put the tenaunt  
 12 of the ponche between the barke and the woode of the  
 stocke, and pull it out agayne, and put in the graffe,  
 and se that it ioyne close, or els mende it. And this  
 can-not fayle, for now the sappe cometh on euery syde,  
 16 but it wyl spring soo faste, that if it stande on playne  
 grounde, the wynde is lykelye to blowe it besyde the  
 heed, for it hath no fastnes in the wodde. And this is  
 beste remedy for blowynge of, to cutte or clyppe awaye  
 [Fol. 57.] 20 somme of the nethermooste leaues as they growe. And  
 this is the beste waye to graffe, and specially a greate  
 tree: than claye it, and bynde it as dyddest the other, &c.

Use a punch  
of hard  
wood.

The graft  
requires  
protection  
from the  
wind.

#### 140. ¶ To nourishe all maner of stone fruite, and nuttes.

Stone-fruits.

As for cheryes, dampsons, bullees, plummies, and suche  
 other, maye be sette of stones, and also of the scyences,  
 growynge aboute the tree, of the same, for they wyll

Filberts and  
walnuts.

4 sooneste beare. Fylberdes and walnuttes maye be set of  
 the nuttes in a gardeyne, and after remoued and sette  
 where he wyll. But whan they be remoued, they wolde  
 be set vpon as good a grounde, or a better, or els they  
 8 wyll not lyke.

#### 141. ¶ A shorte information for a yonge gentyl-man, that entendeth to thryue.

Get a copy  
of this booke,  
and read it  
from  
beginning to  
end.

I auyse hym to gette a copy of this presente boke,  
 and to rede it frome the begynnynge to the endynge,  
 wherby he maye perceyue the chapyters and contentes  
 4 of the same, and by reason of ofte redyng, he maye  
 waxe perfyte, what shulde be doone at all seasons. For

I lerned two verses at grammar-scole, and they be these: [Fol. 57b.]

*Gutta cauat lapidem non vi, sed sæpe cadendo: Sic homo fit* Cf. Ovid, ex

8 *sapiens non vi, sed sæpe legendo:* A droppe of water perseth Ponto  
Epist. IV.  
x. 5.

a stoone, not al-onely by his owne strengthe, but by his  
often fallynge. Ryghte so a man shall be made wyse,  
not all-onely by hym-selfe, but by his ofte redyng. And

12 soo maye this yonge gentyllman, accordyng to the  
season of the yere, rede to his seruantes what chapyter  
he wyll. And also for any other maner of profyte con-  
teyned in the same, the whiche is necessary for a yonge

Read a  
chapter  
to your  
servants  
now and  
then.

16 husbände, that hath not the experyence of housbandrye,  
nor other thynges conteyned in this presente boke, to  
take a good remembraunce and credence thervnto, for  
there is an olde sayinge, but of what auctorytie I can-

20 not tell: *Quod melior est practica rusticorum, quam scientia  
philosophorum.* It is better the practiue or knowlege of

Practice is  
better than  
theory.

an husband-man well proued, than the science or con-  
nyng of a philosopher not proued, for there is nothyng

24 touchyng husbandry, and other profytes conteyned in  
this presente booke, but I haue hadde the experyence  
therof, and proued the same. And ouer and beside al  
this boke, I wil aduise him to ryse betime in the morning,

28 according to the verse before spoke of, *Sanat, sanctificat,* [Fol. 58.]  
*et dilat surgere mane:* And go about his closes, pastures,

fieldes, and specially by the hedges, & to haue in his  
purse a payre of tables, and whan he seeth any-thing,

32 that wolde be amended, to wryte it in his tables: as if he  
fynde any horses, mares, beastes, shepe, swyne, or geese  
in his pastures, that be not his owne: And perauenture  
thoughe they be his owne, he wolde not haue them to

Keep a pair  
of tables,  
and make  
notes of all  
that seems  
amiss.

36 goo there, or to fynde a gap, or a sherde in his hedge,  
or any water standyng in his pastures vppon his grasse,  
wherby he maye take double hurte, bothe losse of his  
grasse, and rotting of his shepe and calues. And also

40 of standyng-water in his corne-fieldes at the landes

Look to the  
corn, cattle,  
ditches, etc.

44 endes, or sydes, and howe he wolde haue his landes  
plowed, donged, sturred, or sowen. And his corne weded  
or shorne or his cattell shifted out of one pasture into  
an other, and to loke what dychyng, quicsettyng, or plash-  
ing, is necessary to be had, and to ouer-se his shepeherd,  
how he handleth and ordreth his shepe, and his seruantes

Look to the  
gates.

48 howe they plowe and do theyr warkes, or if any gate  
be broken down, or want any staues, and go not lyghtly  
to open and tyne, and that it do not traile, and that the  
windes blowe it not open, with many mo necessary  
thynges that are to be loked vpon. For a man alwaye

[Fol. 58b.]

52 wanderynge or goinge aboute somewhat, fyndeth or seeth  
that is a-mysse, and wolde be amended. And as soone  
as he seeth any suche defautes, than let hym take oute his  
tables, and wryte the defautes. And whan he commeth  
56 home to diner, supper, or at nyght, than let hym call his  
bayly, or his heed-seruaunte, and soo shewe hym the  
defautes, that they may be shortly amended. And whan  
it is amended, than let him put it out of his tables. For

Tell your  
balliff of all  
that needs  
to be done.

60 this vsed I to doo .x. or .xii. yeres and more. And thus  
let hym vse dayely, and in shorte space he shall sette  
moche thynges in good order, but dayely it wyll haue  
mendynge. And yf he canne not wryte, let hym nycke  
64 the defautes vppon a stycke, and to shewe his bayely, as  
I sayde before. Also take hede bothe erly and late, at  
all tymes, what maner of people resorte and comme to thy  
house, and the cause of their commynge, and specially

If you  
cannot  
write, make  
nicks on a  
stick.

68 if they brynge with them pytchers, cannes, tancardes,  
bottelles, bagges, wallettes, or busshell-pokes. For if thy  
seruauntes be not true, they maye doo the great hurte,  
and them-selfe lyttel auauntage. Wherefore they wolde be  
72 well loked vppon. And he that hath .ii. true seruauntes,  
a man-seruaunte, and an-other a woman-seruaunt, he hath  
a great treasure, for a trewe seruaunte wyl do iustly hym-  
selfe, and if he se his felowes do amysse, he wyl byd them

Keep an eye  
on the  
servants,  
and on all  
who come to  
your house.

[Fol. 59]

76 do no more so, for if they do, he wyll shewe his master  
therof: and if he do not this, he is not a trewe seruaunt.

142. ¶ A lesson made in Englisshe verses, to teache a gentyl-  
mans seruaunt, to saye at euery tyme whan he  
taketh his horse, for his remembraunce, that he shall  
not forget his gere in his inne behynde hym.

Pvrse, dagger, cloke, nyght-cap, kerchef, shoyng-horne,  
boget, and shoes.

Hexameter  
verses, to  
help the  
memory.

Spere, male, hode, halter, sadelclothe, spores, hatte, with  
thy horse-combe.

Bowe, arrowes, sworde, bukler, horne, leisshe, gloues,  
stringe, and thy bracer.

4 Penne, paper, inke, parchmente, reedwaxe, pommies,  
bokes, thou remember.

Penknyfe, combe, thimble, nedle, threde, poynte, leste  
that thy gurtie breake.

Bodkyn, knyfe, lyngel, gyue thy horse meate, se he be  
showed well.

Make mery, synge and thou can; take hede to thy gere,  
that thou lose none.

143. ¶ A prologue for the wyues occupation.

[Fol. 59b.]

Nowe thou husbande, that haste doone thy dylygence  
and labour, that longeth to an husbande, to get thy  
lyuynge, thy wyues, thy chylidrens, and thy seruauntes:

4 yet are there other thynges, that muste nedes be done,  
or elles thou shalte not thryue. For there is an olde  
common sayenge, that seldom doth the housbande thryue,  
without the leue of his wyfe. By this sayenge it shoulde

Seldom  
thrives the  
husband  
without his  
wife's leave.

8 seme, that there be other occupations and labours, that  
be moste conuenient for the wyues to do. And howe be  
it that I haue not experyence of al theyr occupations and  
warkes, as I haue of husbandry, yet a lyttell wyl I speke  
12 what they ought to do, though I tel them nat howe they  
shulde doo and exercyse theyr labours and occupations.

I will tell  
the wives  
part of their  
duties.

## 144. ¶ A lesson for the wyfe.

A lesson of  
Solomon.

[Fol. 60.]

A lesson of  
Jerome.Choose  
either idle-  
ness or  
labour.

But yet er I begynne to shewe the wyfe, what warkes she shall do, I wyll firste teche her a lesson of Salomon, as I did to her husbände a lesson of the philosopher, and that is, that she shulde not be ydle at noo tyme: for Salomon saythe, *Ociosus non gaudebit cum electis in cælo: sed lugebit in æternum cum reprobis in inferno*: That is to say, The ydle folke shall not ioye with the chosen folkes in heuen, but they shall sorowe with the reproued and forsaken folkes in hell. And saynt Iherom saythe: *Semper boni operis aliquid facito, vt te diabolus inueniat occupatum: Quia sicut in aqua stante generantur vermes: sic in homine ocioso generantur malæ cogitationes*: That is to say, Alwaye be doinge of some good werkes, that the dyuell may fynde the euer occupied: for as in standynge water are engendred wormes, ryghte soo in an ydle body are engendred ydle thoughtes. Here mayste thou se, that of ydelnes commeth damnation, and of good warkes and labour cometh saluation. Nowe arte thou at thy lyberty, to chose whether waye thou wylt, wherein is a great diuersitie. And he is an vnhappy man or woman, that god hath giuen bothe wyt and reason, and putteth hym in chose, and woll chose the worst parte. Nowe thou wyfe, I trust to shewe to the dyuers occupations, warkes, and laboures, that thou shalt not nede to be ydle no tyme of the yere.

## 145. ¶ What thynges the wyfe is bounden of ryght to do.

Let the wife  
love her  
husband.

[Fol. 60b.]

Matt. xix. 5.  
Mark x. 7.

First and pryncypally the wyfe is bounde of ryght to loue her housbände, aboue father and mother, and aboue all other men. For our lorde saythe in his gossell; *Relinquet patrem et matrem, et adheret<sup>1</sup> uxori suæ*: A man shulde leue father and mother, and drawe to his wyfe: and the same wyse a wyfe shulde do to her husbände.

<sup>1</sup> Printed *abheret*.

And are made by the vertue of the sacrament of holy  
 8 scripture one fleshe, one bloude, one body, and two One body,  
and two  
soules.  
 soules. Wherefore theyr hartes, theyr myndes, theyr  
 warkes, and occupations, shulde be all one, neuer to  
 seuer nor chaunge durynge theyr natural lyues, by any  
 12 mannes acte or dede, as it is sayde in the same gospel:  
*Quod deus coniunxit, homo non separet*: That thyng that  
 god hath ioyned to-gether, noo man maye seuer nor  
 departe. Wherefore it is conueniente that they loue  
 16 eche other as effectually as they wolde doo theyr owne  
 selfe, &c.

#### 146. ¶ What warkes a wyfe shulde do in generall.

First in a mornyng whan thou arte waked, and pur- First, at  
rising, bless  
thyself.  
 poseste to ryse, lyfte vp thy hande, and blesse the, and  
 make a sygne of the holy crosse, *In nomine patris, et filii,*  
 4 *et spiritus sancti. Amen.* In the name of the father, the  
 sonne, and the holy gooste. And if thou saye a *Pater* [Fol. 6r.]  
*noster*, an *Aue*, and a *Crede*, and remember thy maker,  
 thou shalte speede moche the better. And whan thou arte  
 8 vp and redy, than first swepe thy house, dresse vp thy Sweep the  
house,  
 dyssheborde, and sette all thynges in good order within  
 thy house: milke thy kye, socle<sup>1</sup> thy calves, sye vp thy milk the  
cows, dress  
the children.  
 mylke, take vppe thy chyldren and araye theym, and  
 12 prouyde for thy husbandes brekefast, dynner, souper,  
 and for thy chyldren and seruantes, and take thy parte  
 with theym. And to ordeyne corne and malte to the  
 myll, to bake and brue withall whanne nede is. And  
 16 meete it to the myll, and fro the myll, and se that thou  
 haue thy measure agayne besyde the tolle, or elles the  
 myller dealeth not truely with the, or els thy corne is not  
 drye as it shoulde be. Thou must make butter, and chese Make butter  
and cheese.  
 20 whan thou maist, serue thy swyne bothe mornyng and  
 euenynge, and gyue thy poleyn meate in the mornyng;

<sup>1</sup> Printed secle.

- and whan tyme of the yere cometh, thou must take hede  
 howe thy hennes, duckes, and geese do ley, and to gather  
 Gather the eggs. 24 vp theyr egges, and whan they waxe brodye, to sette  
 them there as noo beastes, swyne, nor other vermyn  
 hurte them. And thou muste knowe, that all hole-footed  
 fowles wyll sytte a moneth, and all clouen-footed fowles  
 [Fol. 61d.] 28 wyll sytte but three wekes, excepte a peyhenne, and greatte  
 fowles, as cranes, bustardes, and suche other. And whan  
 they haue broughte forthe theyr byrdes, to see that they  
 be well kepte from the gleyd, crowes, fullymartes, and  
 Put in order the garden. 32 other vermynne. And in the begynnyng of Marche, or  
 a lyttell afore, is tyme for a wyfe to make her garden, and  
 to gette as many good sedes and herbes as she canne,  
 and specially suche as be good for the pottle, and to eate :  
 36 and as ofte as nede shall requyre, it muste be weded, for  
 els the wedes wyl ouergrowe the herbes. And also in  
 Marche is tyme to sowe flaxe and hempe, for I haue  
 harde olde houswyues saye, that better is Marche hurdes  
 Retter are March hardes than April flax. 40 than Apryll flaxe, the reason appereth : but howe it  
 shulde be sowen, weded, pulled, repeyled, watred,  
 wasshen, dyed, beaten, braked, tawed, hecheled, spon,  
 wounden, wrapped, and wouen, it nedeth not for me to  
 44 shewe, for they be wise ynough ; and therof may they  
 make shetes, bordclothes, towels, shertes, smockes, and  
 Make sheets, towels, and shirts. suche other necessaryes, and therefore let thy dystaffe  
 be alwaye redye for a pastyme, that thou be not  
 48 ydle. And vndouted a woman can-not gette her lyuyng  
 honestly with spynnyng on the distaffe, but it stoppeth  
 [Fol. 62.] a gap, and muste nedes be had. The bolles of flaxe,  
 whan they be ripeled of, must be rideled from the wedes,  
 Dry the flax. 52 and made drye with the son, to get out the sedes. Howe  
 be it one maner of linsede, called loken sede, wyll not  
 open by the son : and therefore, whan they be drye, they  
 muste be sore brused and broken, the wiues knowe howe,  
 56 and than winowed and kepte drye, tyll yere-tyme come

agayn. Thy female hempe must be pulled from the churle hempe, for that beareth no sede, and thou must do by it, as thou dydest by the flax. The churle hempe  
 60 beareth sede, and beware that byrdes eate it not, as it groweth: the hemp therof is not soo good as the female hempe, but yet it wyll do good seruyce. May fortune sometime, that thou shalt haue so many thynges to do, that  
 64 thou shalt not well knowe where is best to begyn. Than take hede, which thing shulde be the greatest losse, if it were not done, and in what space it wold be done: than thinke what is the greatest losse, & there begyn.  
 68 But in case that thyng, that is of greateste losse, wyll be longe in doynge, and thou myghteste do thre or foure other thynges in the meane whyle, thanne loke well, if all these thynges were sette together, whiche of them  
 72 were the greatest losse; and if all these thynges be of greater losse, and may be all done in as shorte space, as [Fol. 62b.] the other, than doo thy many thynges fyrste.

Sometimes there is a great deal to do.

Leave that till last which will best wait.

¶ It is conueniente for a housbande to haue shepe of  
 76 his owne, for many causes, and than maye his wife haue part of the woll, to make her husbande and her-selfe some clothes. And at the leaste waye, she may haue the lockes of the shepe, eyther to make clothes or blankettes  
 80 & couerlettes, or bothe. And if she haue no woll of her owne, she maye take wol to spynne of clothe-makers, and by that meanes she maye haue a conuenient luyng, and many tymes to do other warkes. It is a wyues occupation,  
 84 to wynowe all maner of cornes, to make malte, to washe and wrynge, to make heye, shere corne, and in tyme of nede to helpe her husbande to fyll the mucke-wayne or dounge-carte, dryue the ploughe, to loode hey, corne, and  
 88 suche other. And to go or ride to the market, to sel butter, chese, mylke, egges, chekyns, capons, hennes, pygges, gese, and all maner of cornes. And also to bye all maner of necessarye thynges belongynge to houssholde, and to

With some of the wool make clothes.

Winnow corn, brew, wash, make hay, etc.

Sell the butter, chese, hens, geese, and corn.

Keep accounts.

92 make a trewe rekenynge and a-compte to her housbande,  
 what she hath payed. And yf the housbande go to the  
 market, to bye or sell, as they ofte do, he than to shewe  
 his wife in lyke maner. For if one of them shoulde vse  
 96 to deceyue the other, he deceyueth hym-selfe, and he is  
 not lyke to thryue. And therfore they muste be trewe  
 eyther to other. I coulde peraduenture shewe the hous-  
 bandes dyuerse poyntes that the wyues deceyue them  
 100 in: and in lyke maner, howe husbandes deceyue their  
 wyues: but if I shulde do so, I shulde shewe mo subtyll  
 poyntes of deceypt, than eyther of them knewe of before.  
 And therfore me semeth beste to holde my peace, least  
 104 I shoulde do as the knyght of the toure dyd, the whiche  
 had many fayre doughters, and of fatherly loue that he  
 oughte to them, he made a boke, to a good entente, that  
 they myghte eschewe and flee from vyces, and folowe  
 108 vertues. In the whiche boke he shewed, that if they  
 were wowed, moued, or styred by any man, after suche  
 a maner as he there shewed, that they shulde withstande  
 it. In the whiche boke he shewed so many wayes, howe  
 a man shoulde attayne to his purpose, to brynge a woman  
 to vice, the whiche wayes were so naturall, and the wayes  
 to come to theyr purpose were soo subtylly contriyed,  
 and craftely shewed, that harde it wold be for any woman  
 116 to resyste or deny theyr desyre. And by the sayd boke  
 hath made bothe the men and the women to knowe more  
 vyces, subtyltye, and crafte, than euer they shulde haue  
 knowen, if the boke had not ben made: in the whiche  
 120 boke he named hym-selfe the knight of the towre. And  
 thus I leue the wyues, to vse theyr occupations at theyr  
 owne discreation.

[Fol. 63.]

I will not  
explain all  
points of  
deceit.Else I  
should act  
like the  
Knight de  
la Tour,who wrote  
a book  
against vice,but really  
taught vice.

[Fol. 63b.]

## 147. ¶ To kepe measure in spendynge.

Take care.

Nowe thou husbande and huswyfe, that haue done

- your diligence and cure, accordynge to the fyrste artycle of the philosopher, that is to saye: *Adhibe curam*. And also haue well remembred the sayeng of wyse Salomon: *Quod ociosus non gaudebit cum electis in cælo: sed lugebit in æternum cum reprobis in inferno*: Thanne ye must remembre, obserue, and kepe in mind, the seconde article of the sayinge of the philosopher, that is to saye, *Tene mensuram*: That is to saye in englysshe, holde and kepe measure. And accordynge to that sayenge, I lerned two verses at grammer-schole, and they be these, *Qui plus expendit, quam rerum copia rendit: Non admiretur, si paupertate grauetur*: he that dothe more expende, thanne his goodes wyll extende, meruayle it shall not be, thoughe he be greued with pouertee. And also accordynge to [Fol. 64.] that sayenge speketh sayncte Paul and saythe, *Iuxta facultates faciendi sunt sumptus, ne longi temporis victum, breuis hora consumat*: That is to saye, A[f]ter thy faculty or thy honoure, make thyne expences, leste thou spende in shorte space that thyng, that thou shouldest lyue by longe. This texte toucheth euery manne, from the hiest degree to the loweste; wherfore it is necessary to euerye manne and womanne to remembre and take good hede there-vnto, for to obserue, kepe, and folowe the same; but bycause this texte of sayncte Paule is in latyn, and husbandes commonely can but lyttell laten, I fere leaste they can-not vnderstande it. And thoughe it were declared ones or twyse to theym, that they wolde forgette it: Wherfore I shall shewe to theym a texte in englysshe, and that they maye well vnderstande, and that is this, Eate within thy tedure.

Keep  
measure.

Spendthrifts  
come to  
poverty.

Spend  
according  
to your  
income;

or, in plain  
English,

eat within  
your tether.

### 148. ¶ To eate within the tedure.

Thou husbande and huswife, that intend to folowe the sayinge of the philosopher, that is to saye, kepe

Spare at the  
brink, not at  
the bottom.  
[Fol. 64b.]

measure, you muste spare at the brynke, and not at the  
4 bottom, that is to vnderstande, in the begynnynge of  
the yere, sellynge of thy cornes, or spendynge in thy  
house, vnto the tyme that thou haue sowen agayne thy  
wynter-corne, and thy lente-corne, and than se what  
8 remayneth to serue thy house, and of the ouerplus thou  
mayste sell and bye suche other necessaryes, as thou must

Do not  
spend much  
at the  
beginning of  
the year.

nedes occupie. And if thou spende it in the begynnynge  
of the yere, and shall want in the hynder ende, than  
12 thou doste not eate within thy tedure, and at the laste  
thou shalte be punyshed, as I shal proue the by ensample.  
Take thy horse, and go tedure him vpon thyne owne  
lees, flytte hym as ofte as thou wylte, no manne wyll

Give not  
your horse  
too long a  
tether.

16 saye 'wronge thou doste'; but make thy horse to longe  
a tedure, than whan thou haste tyed hym vppon thyne  
owne lees, his tedure is so longe, that it recheth to the  
middles of an-other mans lees or corne: Nowe haste  
20 thou gyuen hym to moche lybertye, and that man, whose  
corne or grasse thy horse hath eaten, wyll be greued at  
the, and wyll cause the to be amerced in the court, or  
elles to make hym amendes, or bothe. And if thy

If the horse  
break his  
tether,

24 horse breake his tedure, and go at large in euery mans  
corne and grasse, than commeth the pynder, and taketh  
hym, and putteth hym in the pynfolde, and there shall  
he stande in prison, without any meate, vnto the tyme

[Fol. 65.]

28 thou hast payde his raunsome to the pynder, and also  
make amendes to thy neyghbours, for distroyenge of  
theyr corne. Ryght so, as long as thou eatest within

he will be  
impounded.

Wherefore,  
'eat within  
thy tether.'

32 noo man, soo longe shalte thou encrease and growe in  
rychesse, and euery man wyll be content with the. And  
if thou make thy tedure to longe, that thyne owne  
porcyon wyll not serue the, but that thou shalte begge,  
36 borowe, or bye of other: that wyll not longe endure,  
but thou shalte fall in-to pouertye. And if thou breake

thy tedure, and ren ryot at large, and knowe not other  
 mennes goodes frome thyne owne, than shall the pynder,  
 40 that is to saye, the sheryffe and the bayly, areste the,  
 and putte the in the pynfolde, that is to say, in prison,  
 there to abyde tyll the truth be knowen: and it is  
 meruayle, if thou scape with thy lyfe, and therfore eate  
 44 within thy tedure.

149. *A shorte lesson for the husbände.*

One thinge I wyl aduise the to remembre, and specially  
 in wynter-tyme, whan thou sytteste by the fyre, and hast  
 supped, to consyder in thy mynde, whether the warkes,  
 4 that thou, thy wyfe, & thy seruantes shall do, be more [Fol. 65b.]  
 auantage to the than the fyre, and candell-lyghte, meate  
 and drynke that they shall spende, and if it be more  
 auantage, than syt styll: and if it be not, than go to thy  
 8 bedde and slepe, and be vppe betyme, and breake thy  
 faste before day, that thou mayste be all the shorte  
 wynters day about thy busynes. At grammer-scole I  
 lerned a verse, that is this, *Sanat, sanctificat, et dilat*  
 12 *surgere mane.* That is to say, Erly rysyng maketh a man  
 hole in body, holer in soule, and rycher in goodes. And  
 this me semeth shuld be sufficient instruction for the  
 husbände to kepe measure.

150. ¶ *How men of hye degree do kepe measure.*

To me it is doubtfull, but yet me semeth, they be  
 rather to lyberall in expences, than to scarce, and  
 specyally in three thynges. The fyrste is prodigalytie in  
 4 outragious and costely aray, fer aboue measure; the  
 seconde thyng is costely charge of delycyous meates and  
 drynkes; the thyrde is outragious playe and game, ferre  
 aboue measure. And nowe to the fyrste poynte.

Do not  
break your  
tether.

Do not  
waste  
candle-light.

Rather go to  
bed, and  
rise early.

Early rising  
makes a  
man  
healthy,  
holy, and  
rich.

Men of high  
degree are  
too prodigal  
and waste-  
ful.

[Fol. 66.]

## 151. ¶ Prodigalite in outragious and costely aray.

I have seen  
noblemen's  
inventories  
of apparel  
very mode-  
rate as com-  
pared with  
what is worn  
now.

Other men  
try to dress  
like them.

Even  
servants  
dress too  
much.

[Fol. 66b.]

The proud  
man is a  
child of the  
devil.

I haue seen bokes of accompte of the yomen of the wardropes of noble men, and also inuentorys made after theyr decease of their apparell, and I doubte not but at  
4 this daye, it is .xx. tymes more in value, than it was to suche a man of degree as he was an .C. yere a-go : and many tymes it is gyuen away, er it be halfe worne, to a symple man, the whiche causeth hym to weare the same ;  
8 and an other symple man, or a lyttell better, seynge him to weare suche rayment, thynketh in his mynde, that he maye were as good rayment as he, and so causeth hym to bye suche other, to his great coste and charge, aboue  
12 measure, and an yll ensample to all other : and also to see mens seruantes so abused in theyr aray, theyr cotes be so syde, that they be fayne to tucke them vp whan they ryde, as women do theyr kirtels whan they go to the market or  
16 other places, the whiche is an vnconuenient syght. And ferthermore, they haue suche pleytes vpon theyr brestes, and ruffes vpon theyr sleues, aboue theyr elbowes, that yf theyr mayster, or theym-selfe hadde neuer so  
20 greatte nede, they coude not shoote one shote, to hurte theyr ennemyes, tyll they hadde caste of theyr cotes, or cut of theyr sleues. This is fer aboue measure, or common weale of the realme. This began fyrste with honour,  
24 worship, and honesty, and it endeth in pryde, presumption, and pouertye. Wherof speketh saint Austin, *Quemcunque superbum esse videris, diaboli filium esse ne dubites* : That is to say, who-so-euer thou seest that is proude, dout the not,  
28 but he is the diuels chylde. Wherefore agaynst pryde he byddeth the remembre : *Quid fuisti, quid es, et qualis post mortem eris* : That is to say, what thou were, what thou art, and what thou shalte be after thy death. And S.  
32 Bernarde saythe, *Homo nihil aliud est, quam sperma fetidum, saccus stercorum, et esca vermium* : That is to saye,

A man is nothyng but stynkyng fylthe, a sacke of Man is but worm's meat.  
 dounge, and wormes meate. The whiche sayinges wolde  
 36 be remembred, and than me semeth this is sufficient at this  
 time for the first point of the thre.

## 152. ¶ Of delycouse meates and drynkes.

Howe costely are the charges of delycious meates &  
 drynkes, that be nowe most commonly vsed, ouer that it  
 hath ben in tymes paste, and howe fer aboue measure ?  
 4 For I haue seen bokes of accompte of householde, [Fol. 68; no fol. 67.]  
 and brumentes vpon the same, & I doubte not, but  
 in delycious meates, drinkes, and spyces, there is at Men now spend four times as much upon feasts as they used to.  
 this daye foure tymes so moche spent, as was at these  
 8 dayes, to a lyke man in degree; and yet at that tyme  
 there was as moche befe and mutton spent as is nowe,  
 and as many good houtholdes kept, and as many  
 yomenne wayters therin as be nowe. This began with  
 12 loue and charytye whan a lorde, gentylman, or yoman  
 desyred or prayed an other to come to dyner or soupper,  
 and bycause of his commynge he wolde haue a dyssehe  
 or two mo than he wolde haue had, if he had ben  
 16 away. Than of very loue he, remembryng howe louyngely  
 he was bydden to dynner, and howe well he fared, he This has come about gradually.  
 thynketh of very kyndnes he muste nedes byd hym to  
 dyner agayne, and soo ordeyneth for hym as manye maner  
 20 of suche dysshes and meates, as the other man dyd, and  
 two or .iii. mo, & thus by lyttel and litell it is commen fer  
 aboue measure. And begon of loue and charyte, and  
 endeth in pryde and glotony, wherof saynte Ierome Begun in kindness, it ends in pride.  
 24 saythe: *Qui post carnem ambulant, in ventrem et libidinem*  
*proni sunt, quasi irrationabilia iumenta reputantur.* That is  
 to say, They that walke, and be redy to fulfill the lust of [Fol. 68b.]  
 the fleshe and the bely, are taken as vnreasonable beastes;  
 28 and sayncte Gregory sayth, *Dominante vicio gulæ, omnes* Gregory.

*virtutes per luxuriam et vanam gloriam obruuntur*: That is to saye, where the vice of glotony hath domination, all vertues by luxury and vayne glory are cast vnder: the  
 32 whiche sayinges wold in lykewise be remembred; and this me semeth sufficient for the .ii. poynte of the thre.

### 153. ¶ Of outrageous playe and game.

Have some  
recreation.

Dionysius  
Cato, Dis-  
tich. iii. 7.

Poor men  
now play  
too high.

[Fol. 69.]

If men  
played for  
less, it  
might then  
be called  
play.

But now  
men lose  
their lands  
and become  
thieves.

It is conueniente for euery man, of what degree that he be of, to haue playe & game accordynge to his degree. For Cato sayth, *Interpone tuis interdum gaudia curis*: Amonge  
 4 thy charges and busynes thou muste haue sometyme ioye and myrthe; but nowe a-dayes it is doone ferre aboue measure. For nowe a poore man in regarde wyll playe as great game, at all maner games, as gentylman were  
 8 wont to do, or greater, and gentilmen as lordes, and lordes as prynces, & ofte tymes the great estates wyll call gentylmen or yomen to play with them at as great game as they do, and they call it a disport, the whiche  
 12 me semeth a very trewe name to it, for it displeaseth some of them er they departe, and specyall god, for myspendynge of his goodes and tyme. But if they played smalle games, that the poore man that playeth  
 16 myght beare it thoughe he loste, and bate not his countenance, than myght it be called a good game, a good playe, a good sporte, and a pastyme. But whan one shall lose vpon a day, or vpon a nyght, as moche  
 20 money as wold fynde hym and all his house meate and drynke a moneth or a quarter of a yere or more, that maye be well called a disporte, or a displeasure, and ofte tymes, by the meanes therof, it causeth theym to sell their  
 24 landes, dysheryte the heyres, and may fortune to fall to thefte, robbery, or suche other, to the great hurte of themselfe, & of theyr chyl dren, and to the displeasure of god: and they so doinge, lyttel do they pondre or regarde the

28 saying of saynt Paule; *Iuxta facultates faciendi sunt sumptus, ne longi temporis victum brevis hora consumat:*

This play begun with loue and charity, and oft times it endeth with couetous wrath and enuy. And this me Play, begun in love, ends in wrath.

32 thynketh shoulde be a sufficient instruction for kepyng of measure.

#### 154. ¶ A prologue of the thyrd sayinge of the philosopher.

Nowe thou housbande and housewife, that haue done [Fol. 69b.]  
your diligence and cure about your husbandrye and hus-

4 pher, *Adhibe curam*: And also haue well remembred and  
fulfylled the seconde sayinge of the sayde philosopher, Pay attention;

*Tene mensuram*: I doubte not but ye be ryche accordyng  
to the thyrd sayinge of the sayde philosopher, *Et eris* Be frugal; and thou shalt be rich.

8 *diues*. Nowe I haue shewed you the sayinge of the  
philosopher, wherby you haue gotten moche worldely  
possession, me semeth it were necessary, to shewe you  
howe ye maye gette heuenly possessions, accordyng to

12 the sayinge of our lorde in his gospel, *Quid prodest homini, si uniuersum mundum lucretur, animæ vero suæ detrimentum paciatur*: Matt. xvi. 26. What profyteth it to a man, though he

16 he wyn all the worlde, to the hyndraunce and losyng  
of his soule? Howe be it, it shoulde seme vncon-  
uenient for a temporall man to take vpon hym to shewe  
or teache any suche spirytuall matters; and yet there is  
a great diuersytie betwene predication and doctrine.

#### 155. ¶ A diuersitie betwene predication and doctrine.

As sayncte Iherome saythe, there is greate difference or [Fol. 70.]

diuersitie betwene preachinge and doctrine. A preachinge  
or a sermon is, where [is] a conuocation or a gatherynge Difference between preaching and doctrine.

4 of people on holye dayes, or other dayes in churches or

- other places, and times sette and ordeyned for the same. And it belongeth to theym that be ordeyned there-vnto, and haue iurisdiction and auctorytie, and to
- Every man may teach. 8 none other. But euery man may lawefully enforme and teache his brother, or any other, at euery tyme and place behouable, if it seme expedient to hym, for that is an almes-dede, to the whiche euery man is holden &
- 12 bounde to do, accordyng to the sayenge of saynt
- 1 Pet. iv. 10. Peter, *Vnusquisque, sicut accepit gratiam, in alterutrum illam administrare debet.* That is to saye, as euery man hath taken or receyued grace, he oughte to mynyster
- Chrysostom. 16 and shewe it forthe to other. For as Chrisostome saythe, great merite is to hym, and a great reward he shall haue in tyme to come, the which writeth or causeth to be writen, holy doctrine, for that entent, that he may se in
- 20 it, howe he may lyue holylye, and that other may haue it, that they maye be edyfyed or sanctyfyed by the same; for he saythe surely, knowe thou, that howe many soules
- [Fol. 70b.] be saued by the, soo many rewardes thou shalte haue for
- Gregory. 24 eyther. For saynt Gregory saythe, *Nullum sacrificium ita placet deo, sicut zelus animarum:* There is no sacrifice that pleaseth god so moche, as the loue of soules. And
- Gregory. also he saythe, *Ille apud deum maior est in amore, qui ad*
- 28 *eius amorem plurimos trahit:* He is greateste in fauour with god, that draweth moste men to the loue of god. Wherefore me semeth, it is conuenient to enforme and shewe them, how they maye gette heuently possessions,
- 32 as well as I haue shewed them to get worldly possessions. Than to my purpose, and to the poynt where I lefte, 'nowe thou art ryche.'

156. ¶ *What is rychesse.*

What is  
riches.

It is to be vnderstande what is rychesse; and as me semeth, rychesse is that thyng, that is of goodnes, and can-not be taken away from the owner, neyther in his

- 4 temporall lyfe, nor in the lyfe euerlastynge. Than these  
worldly possessions, that I haue spoken of, is no richesse,  
for why they be but floures of the worlde. And that may  
be wel consydered by Iob, the whiche was the ryche-  
8 man of worldely possessions, that was lyuynge in those  
daies, and sodeynely he was the poorest man agayne that [Fol. 71.]  
coulede be lyuynge, and all the whyle he toke pacyence, and  
was content, as appereth by his sayenge, *Dominus dedit*, Job i. 21.
- 12 *dominus abstulit: sicut domino placuit, ita factum est, sit  
nomen domini benedictum:* Our lorde hath gyuen it, our  
lorde hath taken it awaye, and as it pleaseth our lorde,  
so be it, blessed be the name of our lorde. The whiche  
16 Iob may be an ensample to euery true chrysten man, of  
his pacyence and good liuing in tribulation, as appereth  
in his storye, who that lyst to rede therin. And saynte  
Austyne saythe: *Qui terrenis inhiat, et aeterna non cogitat*, Augustine.
- 20 *utrisque in futuro carebit:* he that gathereth in worldly  
thynges, and thynketh not vppon euerlastynge thynges,  
shall wante bothe in tyme to come. For saynte  
Ambrose saythe, *Non sunt bona hominis, quæ secum ferre* Ambrose.
- 24 *non potest:* They are not the goodes of man, the whiche  
he can-not beare with him. And saynte Bernarde saythe: Bernard.  
*Si vestra sint, tollite vobiscum:* Yf they be yours, take them  
with you. Than it is to be vnderstande, what goodes a  
28 man shall take with hym. And these be the good dedes  
and warkes that thou doste here in this temporall lyfe,  
wherof speketh Crysostome: *Fac bene, et operare iustitiam*, Chrysostom.  
*ut spem habeas apud deum, et non desperabis in terra:* Doo [Fol. 71b.]
- 32 well, and worke ryghtwysly, that thou mayste haue truste  
in god, and that thou be not in despayre in this worlde.  
Accordynge to that saythe the prophete Dauyd, *Iunior* Ps. xxxvii.  
*fui, etenim senui, et non vidi iustum derelictum, nec semen* 25.  
25, Vulgate.) (Ps. xxxvi.  
25, Vulgate.)
- 36 *eius querens panem:* I haue ben yonge, and I haue waxen  
olde, and I haue not seen a ryghtwyse man forsaken, nor  
his chyl dren sekyng theyr breade.

## 157. ¶ What is the propertie of a riche man.

- In myne opynyon the propertye of a ryche manne is, to be a purchaser; and if he wyll purchase, I counsell hym to purchase heuen. For sayncte Austyne saythe, *Regnum*
- Augustine. 4 *cælorum nulli clauditur, nisi illi, qui se excluderit*: The kyngedome of heuen is to noo man closed, but to hym that wyll putte oute hym-selfe. Wherfore this texte maye gyue the a courage to prefixe thy mynde, to make
- 8 there thy purchase. And Salomon saythe: *Quod maliciarius emunt infernum, quam boni cælum*: Ill men bye hell derer, thanne the good men bie heuen. And that me semeth maye well be proued by a common ensample: As
- [Fol. 72.] 12 if I had a .M. shepe to sell, and dyuers men come to me, and bye euery manne a .C. of the shepe, all of one price, to paye me at dyuers dayes. I am agreed, and graunt them these dayes; some of the menne be good, and kepe
- 16 theyr promesse, and paye me at theyr dayes, and some of theym doo not paye me. Wherfore I sue theym at the lawe, and by course of the common lawe, I doo recouer my duetie of them, and haue theyr bodyes in prisone for
- 20 execution, tylle they haue made me payment. Nowe these men, that haue broken me promesse, and payed not theyr dewetye, bye theyr shepe derer thanne the good menne bought theyrs. For they haue imprysonment of theyr
- 24 bodyes, and yet must they pay theyr duetyes neuer the lesse, or elles lye and dye there in pryson: the whiche sheepe be derer to them, then to the good men that kepte theyr promes. Righte so euery man chepeth
- Suppose I sell 1000 sheep, 100 to each of 10 men.
- Those who do not pay I imprison for debt.
- These men buy their sheep dearer than the others.
- So it is with men who buy heaven.
- 28 heuen, and god hath sette on it a pryce, and graunted it to euery man, and giuen to them dayes of payment: the pryce is all one, and that is to kepe his commaundementes, duryng theyr lyues: the good men kepe his
- 32 commaundementes, and fulfyll theyr promesse, and haue heuen at theyr decease. The yll men breake promesse, & kepe not his commaundementes, wherfore at theyr
- [Fol. 72b.]

decease they be put in pryson, that is to say in hell,  
 36 there to abyde his ryghtuousenes. And soo the yll men  
 bye hell derer, than the good menne bye heuen. And  
 therefore it is better, to forgoo a lyttel pleasure, or suffer<sup>1</sup>  
 a lyttell payne in this worlde, than to suffer a moche  
 40 greater and a lenger payne in an other worlde. Nowe  
 sythe helle is derer than heuen, I aduyse the specyally  
 to bye heuen, wherin is euerlastynge ioye without ende.  
Ill men buy hell dearer than good men buy heaven.  
 Wherefore buy heaven.

### 158. ¶ What ioyes or pleasures are in heuen.

Saynt Austyn saythe, *Ibi erunt quæcunque ab hominibus* Augustine.  
*desiderantur, vita et salus, copia glorie, honor, pax, et*  
*omnia bona* : That is to saye, There shall be euery thyng  
 4 that any man desyreth, there is lyfe, helth, plenty of ioye,  
 honour, peace, and all maner of goodnes. What wolde a  
 man haue more? And saynt Paule sayth, *Oculus non vidit,*  
*nec auris audiuit, nec in cor hominis ascendit, quæ preparuit deus*  
 8 *diligentibus se* : That is to say, The eye hath not seen, nor  
 the eares hath herde, nor the herte of a man hath thought  
 of so goodly thynges, that god hath ordeyned for theym [Fol. 73.]  
 that loue hym. O what a noble acte that were for an  
 12 husbände or houswyfe, to purchase suche a royall place in  
 heuen, to whiche is no comparyson. Than it is to  
 be knowen, what thyng pleaseth god most, that we myght  
 do it.

### 159. ¶ What thynges pleaseth god most.

By the texte of sayncte Paule, before sayd, loue pleaseth 1 Cor. ii. 9.  
 god aboue al thinge, and that maye be well proued by the  
 sayinge of our lorde hym-selfe, where he saythe : *Da mihi* Prov. xxxiii. 26.  
 4 *cor tuum, et sufficit mihi* ; Gyue me thy harte, and that is  
 sufficiente for me ; for he that hath a mannes harte, hath  
 all his other goodes. What is this mans harte? it is  
 nothyng elles, but very trewe loue. For there can be no

<sup>1</sup> *Misprinted suker.*

8 true loue, but it commeth meryly and immediately from  
the harte : and if thou loue god entyerlye with thy harte,  
than wylte thou do his commaundementes. Than it wolde  
be vnderstande and knowen whiche be his commande-  
12 mentes, that a man may obserue and kepe them.

160. ¶ **What be goddes commaundementes.**

[Fol. 73b.]

Deut. vi. 5.  
Lev. xix. 18.

There be in all .x. commaundementes, the which were  
to long to declare, but they be all concluded and compre-  
hended in two, that is to say : *Diliges dominum deum tuum*  
4 *super omnia : Et proximum tuum sicut te ipsum* : Loue thy  
lorde god aboue al thing, and thy neyghboure as thy-selfe.  
These be lyghte commaundementes, and nature byndeth  
a man to fulfyll, obserue, and kepe them, or els he is not  
8 a naturall man, remembryng what god hath doone for the.  
Fyrste he hath made the to the symylytude and lykenes  
of his owne ymage, and hathe gyuen to the in this worlde  
dyuerse possessions, but specyally he hath redemed thy  
12 soule vpon the crosse, and suffered great payne and  
passion and bodelye deathe for thy sake. What loue,  
what kyndenes was in hym, to doo this for the ? What  
couldst thou desyre hym to do more for the ? And he  
God asks  
love for love. 16 desyreth nothyng of the agayne, but loue for loue. What  
can he desyre lesse ?

161. ¶ **Howe a man shulde loue god and please hym.**

Surelye a man maye loue god and please hym very many  
wayes : but fyrste and principally, he that wyll loue god,  
and please hym, he muste doo as it is sayde in Symbalo  
4 Athanasii : *Quicumque vult saluus esse, ante omnia opus est*  
*vt teneat catholicam fidem*, Who so euer wyll be saued,  
aboue all thyng he must nedes be stedfast in the faythe  
of holy church. And accordynge to that, saythe sayncte  
8 Paule : *Sine fide impossibile est placere deo* ; Without faythe  
it is impossible to please god. And Seneca sayth : *Nichil*

[Fol. 74.]

Athanasian  
Creed.

Heb. xi. 6.

Seneca.

- retinet, qui fidem perdidit*: There abydeth no goodnes in hym, that hath loste his faythe. And soo thou mayste  
 12 well perceyue, that thou canst not loue nor please god, without perfyte fayth. And ferther-more thou mayste not presume to study, nor to argue thy faithe by reason. For saynte Gregory saythe: *Fides non habet meritum, ubi humana* Gregory; xl.  
 16 *ratio prebet experimentum*: Faythe hath no meryte, where Homil. in  
 as mannes reasone proueth the same. This faythe is a pryncypall sygne, that thou loueste god. Also thy good dedes, and thy warkes, is a good sygne, that thou loueste  
 20 god. For saynt Iherome saythe: *Vnusquisque, cuius opera* Jerome.  
*facit, eius filius appellatur*: whose warkes euery man dothe, his son or seruauant he is called. And sayncte Bernarde Bernard.  
 saythe, *Efficacior est vox operis, quam vox sermonis*: The  
 24 dedes and the warkes of a man is more euydent profe, [Fol. 74b.]  
 than his wordes. The fulfyllynge of the .vii. workes of Seven works  
 mercye is an other specyall sygne, that thou louest god: of mercy.  
 and many mo there be, whiche were to longe to rehearse  
 28 them all.

162. ¶ **Howe a man shulde loue his neyghbour.**

- Thou must loue thy neyghboure as thy-selfe, wherin Love of our  
 thou shalt please god specially: for if thou loue thy neyghbour as thy-selfe, it foloweth by reason, that  
 4 thou shalte do nothyng to hym, but suche as thou woldest shulde be done to the. And that is to presume, that thou woldest not haue any hurte of thy body, nor of thy goodes, done vnto the, and lykewyse  
 8 thou shuldest none do vnto hym. And also if thou woldest haue any goodnes done vnto the, eyther in thy bodye, or in thy mouable goodes, lykewyse shuldest thou do vnto thy neyghbour, if it lye in thye power, accordynge  
 12 to the sayinge of saynte Gregorye, *Nec deus sine proximo, nec proximus vere diligitur sine deo*: Gregory.  
 Thou canste not loue god, with-out thou loue thy neyghbour, nor thou canst not

[Fol. 75.] loue thy neighbour, without thou loue god. Wherefore  
 16 thou muste fyrste loue god pryncypallye, and thy neygh-  
 bour secondaryly.

163. ¶ Of prayer that pleaseth god very moche.

Prayer  
 pleaseth  
 God much.

Ambrose.

Prayer is honour and laude to god, and a specyall  
 thyng that pleaseth hym moche, and is a greate sygne,  
 that thou louest god, and that thou arte perfyte and  
 4 stedfaste in the faythe of holy church: and that it is so,  
 it maye be well consydered by our forefathers, that haue  
 for the loue and honour of god made churches. And a  
 man muste dayly at some conueniente tymes exercyse and  
 8 vse prayer hym-selfe, as he oughte to doo. For saynt  
 Ambrose sayth, *Relicto hoc, ad quod teneris, ingratum est*  
*spiritui sancto quicquid aliud operaris*: If thou leaue that  
 thyng vndone, that thou arte bounde to doo, it is not  
 12 acceptable to god, what-so-euer thou dooste elles. Than  
 it is necessarye, that thou do praye, and a poore manne  
 doynge his labour trewely in the daye, and thinketh well,  
 prayeth well: but on the holye daye, he is bounde to come  
 16 to the church, and here his diuyn seruyce.

[Fol. 75b.]

164. ¶ What thyng letteth prayer.

Isa. i. 15.

Prov. xv. 29.

Bernard.

There be two impedimentes, that lette and hynder  
 prayer, that it maye not be herde. And of the fyrste im-  
 pedimente speketh Ysaye the prophete: *Quia manus vestre*  
 4 *plenæ sunt sanguine .i. peccato, ideo non exaudiet vos dominus*:  
 Bycause your handes be full of bloude, that is to saye,  
 full of synne, therfore our lorde dothe not graciously  
 here you. And also prouerborum tertio, *Longe est dominus*  
 8 *ab impiis, et orationes iustorum exaudiet*. Our lorde is ferre  
 fro wycked men, and the prayers of ryghtewyse men he  
 graciously hereth. And sayncte Bernarde saythe, *Qui a*

*præceptis dei auertitur, quod in oratione postulat non meretur :*

- 12 He that dothe not goddes commaundementes, he  
deserueth not to haue his prayer harde. The seconde  
impediment, saythe Anastasius, is, *Si non dimittis iniuriam,* Anastasius.  
*que tibi facta est, non orationem pro te facis, sed maledictionem*  
16 *super te inducis :* If thou forgyue not the wronge done  
vnto the, thou doste not praye for thy-selfe, but thou  
enducest goddes curse to fall vppon the. And Isidorus Isidore.  
saythe, *Sicut nullum in vulnere proficit medicamentum, si*  
20 *adhuc ferrum in eo sit : ila nihil proficiat oratio illius, cuius* [Fol. 81 ;  
*adhuc dolor in mente vel odium manet in pectore.* sic.] Lyke as  
the playster or medecyne can-not heale a wounde, if there  
be any yren styckinge in the same, ryghte soo the prayer  
24 of a man profyeth hym not, as longe as there is sorowe  
in his mynde, or hate abydyng in his breste. For  
sayncte Austyne saythe, *Si desit charitas, frustra habentur* Augustine.  
*cetera.* If charitie wante, all other thynges be voyde.  
28 Wherefore thou muste se that thou stande in the state of  
grace, and not infecte with deedly synne, and than praye  
if thou wylt be harde.

### 165. ¶ Howe a man shulde praye.

- It is to be vnderstande that there be dyuers maner  
of prayinges, *Quedam publica, et quedam priuata ;* That Public  
is to saye, some openlye, and some priuately. Prayer  
4 openly muste nedes be done in the churche by the  
mynstratours of the same people. For it is done for  
all the comynaltye, and therefore the people in that oughte  
to conferme theym-selfe to the sayde mynstratours, and  
8 there to be presente to praye vnto god after a dewe  
maner. *Oratio priuata.* The prayer pryuatly done, Private  
oughte to be doone in secrete places, for two causes. [Fol. 81b.]  
For prayer eleuateth and lyfteth vp a mannes mynde  
12 to god. And the mynde of man is sooner and better

- lyfte vppe whan he is in a pryuye place, and separate  
 frome multytude of people. An other cause is to auoyde  
 vaynglory that myghte lyghtely ensue or ryse thervppon,  
 16 whan it is doone openly; and therof speketh our  
 Matt. vi. 5. sauour, where he sayth, *Cum oratis, non eritis sicut  
 hypocritæ, qui amant in sinagogis et in angulis platearum  
 stantes orare.* That is to saye, whan ye praye, be not  
 20 you as the hypocrytes, the whiche loue to stande in  
 theyr synagoges and corners of hyghe-wayes to praye.  
 Also some folkes pray with the lyppes or mouthe, and  
 not with the herte, of whome spekethe our lorde by his  
 Isa. xxix. 13. 24 prophete, *Hij labiis me honorant, cor autem eorum longe  
 est a me;* They honour me with theyr mouthe, and  
 Gregory. theyr hertes be ferre from me. And sayncte Gregory  
 saythe, *Quid prodest strepitus labiorum vbi mutum est cor?*  
 28 What profyteth the labour of the mouthe, where the  
 Isidore. herte is dombe? And Isodore saythe, *Longe quippe a  
 deo est animus, qui in oratione cogitationibus sæculi fuerit  
 occupatus.* His soule is far from god, that in his prayer  
 32 his mynde is occupied in warkes of the worlde. There  
 [Fol. 82.] be other that pray both with the mouth and hart, of  
 John iv. 24. whom speketh sayncte Iohan .x. *Veri adoratores, adorabunt  
 patrem in spiritu et veritate.* The true prayers wylle  
 36 worshyp the father of heauen in spirite and with trouthe.  
 Isidore. Isodorus saythe, *Tunc veraciter oramus, quando aliunde  
 non cogitamus.* Than we praye truely, whan we thynke  
 Richard of on nothyng e elles. *Richardus de Hampole. Ille deuote*  
 Hampole. *orat, qui non habet cor vacabundum in terrenis occupationibus,  
 sed sublatum ad deum in cælestibus.* He prayeth deuoutly,  
 40 that hath not his harte wauerynge in worldelye occupa-  
 tions, but alwaye subleuate and lyfte vppe to god in  
 44 heuen. There be other that praye with the harte. vnde  
 Matt. vi. 6. Mat. vi. *Tu autem cum oraueris, intra [in] cubiculum tuum  
 .i. in loco secreto, et clauso hostio, ora patrem tuum.* Whan  
 thou shalte praye, entre into thy chambre or oratory,

- 48 and steke the doore, and praye to the father of heuen.  
 Isodorus, *Ardens oratio est non labiorum sed cordium, potius* Isidore.  
*enim orandum est corde quam ore.* The hoter prayer is  
 with the harte than with the lyppes, rather pray with  
 52 thy herte than with thy mouth. *Regum primo. Anna* 1 Sam. i. 13.  
*loquebatur in corda.* Anna spake with the harte.

**166. A meane to put away ydle thoughtes in prayinge.** [Fol. 82<sup>b</sup>.]

- And to auoyde wauerynge myndes, in worldlye occu- Against idle thoughts.  
 pations whanne thou shalte praye, I shall shewe vnto you  
 the beste experience that euer I coulde fynde for the same,  
 4 the whiche haue benne moche troubled therwith, and that  
 is this. He that can rede and vnderstande latyne, let If you understand Latin, keep your eye on the book, and remember the English of it.  
 hym take his booke in his hande, and looke stedfastely  
 vppon the same thyng that he readeth and seeth, that  
 8 is no trouble to hym, and remembre the englysshe of  
 the same, wherein he shall fynde greatte swetenes, and shall  
 cause his mynde to folowe the same, and to leaue other  
 worldly thoughtes. And he that canne-not reade nor  
 12 vnderstande his pater noster, Aue, nor Crede, he must If not, think of Christ's passion,  
 remembre the passyon of Christe, what payne he suffered  
 for hym, and all mankynde, for redemyng of theyr soules.  
 And also the miracles and wonders that god hath doone,  
 16 and fyrste what wonders were doone the nyghte of his  
 natiuitie and byrthe. And howe he turned water in-to and of His miracles;  
 wyne, and made the blynde to se, the dombe to speake,  
 the deafe to here, the lame to go, the sycke to be hole.  
 20 And howe he fed fyue thousande with two fysshes, and [Fol. 83.]  
 fyue barley loues, wherof was left .xii. coffyns or skypes  
 of fragmentes. And howe he reised Lazare from deathe  
 to lyfe, with manye moo myracles that be innumerable to  
 24 be rehersed. And also to remembre the specyall poyntes  
 of his passion, howe he was solde & betrayed of Judas, how He was betrayed,  
 and taken by the iewes, and broughte before Pylate, than

to kynge Herode, and to bysshope Cayphas, and than to  
 28 Pylate agayne, that iudged hym to death, and howe he  
 scourged, was bounde to a piller, and how they scurged, bobbed,  
 mocked hym, spytte in his face, crowned hym with thornes,  
 and caused hym to beare the crosse to the mounte of  
 and cruci- 32 Caluary, whervppon he was nayled both handes and  
 fied; fete, and wounded to the harte with a sharpe spere, and  
 went down 36 to lyfe, and howe ofte he appered to his discyples and  
 to hell; and other moo. And what myracles he wroughte afterwarde,  
 rose again. and specyally what power he gaue to his dyscyples, that  
 were noo clerkes, to teache and preche his faythe, and  
 40 worke many myracles, and specyally whan they preached  
 before menne of dyuers nations and languages, and euerye  
 [Fol. 83d.] man vnderstode in theyr own language, the whiche is  
 a sygne that god wolde haue euery manne saued, and  
 44 to knowe his lawes, the whiche was a myracle able to  
 conuerte all the infydeles, heretykes, and lollers in the  
 worlde.

## 167. ¶ A meane to auoyde temptation.

The holier a 8 It is ofte-tymes seen, that the holier that a man is, the  
 man is, the more he is tempted, and he that soo is, maye thanke god  
 tempted. therof. For god of his goodnes and grace hath not gyuen  
 4 to the dyuell auctoritie nor power to attempte any man  
 ferther and aboue that, that he that is so tempted, maye  
 withstande. For sayncte Gregory sayth, *Non est timendum*  
 Gregory. (sic) *hostis, qui non potest vincere nisi volentem*. An enemye is  
 8 not to be dradde, the whiche maye not ouercome, but if a  
 manne be wyllynge. And it is to presume, that he that is  
 soo tempted, standeth in the state of grace. For sayncte  
 Ambrose saythe, *Illos diabolus*<sup>1</sup> *vexare negligit, quos iure*  
 Ambrose. 12 *hæreditario se possidere sentit*. The dyuell despyseth to

<sup>1</sup> Misprinted *diabolis*.

vexe or trouble those, the whiche he felethe him-selfe to haue in possessyon by ryght inheritaunce. And if thou be so tempted, vexed, or troubled, I shall shewe vnto the  
 16 two verses, that if thou do therafter, thou shalte be eased [Fol. 84.] of thy temptacyon, and haue greatte thanke and laude of god and rewarde therfore; these be the verses.

*Hostis non ledit, nisi cum temptatus obedit.*

Two useful verses.

20 *Est leo si sedit, si stat quasi musca recedit.*

¶ That is to say, The gostly enemy hurteth not, but whan he that is tempted obeyeth to his temptation. Than his  
 ghostly enemy plaieth the lyon, if that he that is so  
 24 tempted syt styll and obey to hym. And if he that is tempted, stande styfly agaynste hym, the ghostlye ennemye flyeth awaye lyke a flye. This me semeth maye be wel  
 proued by a famylier ensauple. As if a lorde had a  
 28 castell, and deliuered it to a capytayne to kepe, if there come ennemies to the castell, and call to the capytayn, and byd hym delyuer them this castell. The capytayne cometh and openeth them the gates, and delyuereth the  
 32 keyes. Nowe is this castell soone wonne, and this capytayne is a false traytour to the lorde. But lette the capitaine arme hym-selfe, and steke the gates, and stande styfly vpon the walle, and commaunde them to  
 36 auoyde at theyr peryll, and they wyll not tary to make any assault. Ryght so euery man is capytayne of his owne soule, and if thy gostely ennemy come and tempte the, and thou, that art capytayne of thyne owne soule, wyll  
 40 open the gates, and delyuer hym the keyes and let hym in, thy sowle is soone taken prysoner, and thou a false traytour to thy soule, and worthy to be punysshed in pryson for euer. And if thou arme thy-selfe and stande  
 44 styfly agaynste hym, and wyll not consente to hym, he wyll auoyde and fle away, and thou shalt haue a greate reward for withstandynge of the sayde temptation.

The tempter is a lion, if we sit still;

but if we resist, he is but a fly.

A faint-hearted captain loses his castle,

and is a traitor. But if he resist, the enemy will not tarry.

Every man is captain of his own soul. [Fol. 84b.]

168. ¶ *Almes-dedes pleaseth god moche.*

- Almsdeeds. Almes-dedes pleseth god very moche, and it is great sygne that thou loueste bothe god and thy neyghboure. And he of whome almes is asked, oughte to consyder
- God asketh. 4 thre thynges, that is to saye, who asketh almes, what he asketh, and wherevnto he asketh. Nowe to the fyrste, who asketh almes, *Deus petit*. God asketh. For saynte Jerome sayth, *Quia deus adeo diligit pauperes, quod quicquid fit eis propter amorem suum, reputat sibi factum*. That is to saye, bycause that god loueth poore men so moche, what-someuer thyng is gyuen vnto them for the loue of hym, he taketh it as it were done to hym-selfe; as it is
- [Fol. 85.] 12 sayde in his gossell, *Quod vni ex minimis meis fecistis, michi fecistis*. That thyng that ye gyue or do to the least of those that be myne, ye do it to me. Thanne to the seconde, what asketh god? *Non nostrum, sed suum*. He
- He asks not ours, but his. 16 asketh not that thyng that is ours, but that thyng that is his owne. As saythe the prophete Dauid, *Tua sunt domine omnia: Et quæ de manu tua accepimus, tibi dedimus*. Good lorde, all thynges be thyne, and those thynges that we
- He asks only to borrow, and to repay a hundredfold. 20 haue taken of the, of those haue we gyuen the. Thanne to the thyrde, Where-vnto dothe god aske? He asketh not to gyue hym, but all-onely to borowe, *Non tamen ad triplas, s[c]ilicet, immo ad centuplas*. Not all-onely to haue
- Augustine. 24 thryse soo moche, but forsothe to haue an hundred tymes soo moche. As saynt Austyn saythe, *Miser homo, quid veneraris homini; venerare deo, et centuplum accipies, et vitam æternam possidebis?* Thou wretched manne, why doste thou
- [Fol. 85b.] 28 worshyp or dreade manne: worshyp thou god and dreade hym, and thou shalte receyue an hundred tymes so moche, and haue in possessyon euerlastyng lyfe, the whiche manyfolde passeth all other rewardes? *Prouerbiorum xiiii.*
- Prov. xix. 7. 32 *Veneratur domino,<sup>1</sup> qui miseretur pauperibus*: He worshyppeth our lorde, that hath mercye and pytye on poore

<sup>1</sup> Printed *dominus*; but the right reading is *Faneratur domino*.

folkes. And the glose therof sayth, *Centuplum accepturus*.  
 And thou shalte receyue an .C. tymes so moche. And it  
 36 is to be vnderstande, that there be thre maner of almes- <sup>Three kinds  
of alms-  
deeds.</sup>  
 dedes, that is to saye : *Egenti largire quicquid poteris :  
 dimittere eis a quibus lesus fueris : Errantem corrigere, et in  
 viam veritatis reducere*. That is to saye, to gyue to the  
 40 nedy what thou well mayste, to forgyue theym that haue  
 trespased to the, and to correcte them that do amysse,  
 and to brynge them into the way of ryghte.

169. ¶ *The fyrste maner of almes.*

*Egenti largire quicquid poteris*. Gyue to the nedy what  
 thou well maye. For our lorde saythe in his gospell : *Date* <sup>Luke xi. 41  
vi. 38.</sup>  
*elemosinam, et omnia munda sunt vobis. Et alibi. Date, et*  
 4 *dabitur vobis* : Gyue almes, and all worldly rychesse is  
 yours ; gyue, and it shall be gyuen to you. Almes-dede  
 is a holy thyng, it encreaseth a mans welthe, it maketh  
 lesse a mannes synnes, it lengtheth a mans lyfe, it maketh  
 8 a man of good mynde, it delayeth yll tymes, and closeth <sup>[Fol. 86.]</sup>  
 all thynges, hit delyuereth a manne from deathe, it ioyneth  
 a manne with aungelles, and seuereth hym from the dyuell,  
 and is lyke a wall vnable to be foughten agaynst. And  
 12 saynt James saythe : *Sicut aqua extinguit ignem, ita elemo-  
 sina peccatum*. As water slecketh fyer, soo dothe almes-  
 dede slake synne. Salomon saythe, *Qui dat pauperi, non* <sup>Prov. xxviii.  
27.</sup>  
*indigebit*. He that giueth vnto a poore man, shal neuer  
 16 haue nede. And also he sayth, *Qui obturat aurem suam* <sup>Prov. xxi. 13.</sup>  
*ad clamorem pauperis, et ipse clamabit, et non exaudietur*.  
 He that stoppeth his eare at the clamoure or crie of a  
 pore man, he shall crye, and he shall not be gracyously  
 20 herde. There maye no manne excuse hym from gyuyng  
 of almes, thoughe he be poore. And let hym doo as  
 the poore wydowe dyd, that offered a farthyng, wherfore <sup>Mark, xii.  
42 ;  
Luke, xxi. 2.</sup>  
 24 ryche men that offered golde. And if thou mayste not

- gyue a farthyng, gyue lesse, or gyue fayre wordes, or good information, ensauple, and token : and god shall rewarde the bothe for thy dede and for thy good wyll. And
- 28 that thou dooste, do it with a good wyll. For saynte  
 2 Cor. ix. 7. Paule saythe, *Hilarem datorem diligit deus*. God loueth  
 [Fol. 86b.] a glad gyuer, and that if it be of true begotten goodes. For Salomon saythe, *De tuis iustis laboribus ministra*  
 32 *pauperibus*. Of thy trewe labours mynystre and gyue to  
 Isidore. the poore folkes. For Isidorus saythe, *Qui iniuste tollit, iuste nunquam tribuit*. He that taketh wrongfully, cannot gyue trewelye. For it is wrytten Ecclesiastici xxxv.  
 Ecclus. xxxiv. 24. 36 *Qui de rapinis, aut usuris, a ut de furto immolat : e[s]t quasi qui coram patre victimat filium*. He that offereth of the goodes, that he getteth by extortyon, vsurye, or thefte, he is lyke as a man slewe the sonne in the presence of  
 40 the father. Thou mayste ryghte well knowe, the father wolde not be well contente. Noo more wolde god be pleased with the gyfte of suche begotten goodes.

170. ¶ *The seconde maner of almes.*

- Dimittere eis, a quibus lesus fueris*. To forgyue theym that haue trespassed to the, wherin thou shalte please god moche. For it is in the gospell of sayncte Marke
- Mark, xi. 6. 4 .xii. *Si non dimiseritis aliis, nec pater vester celestis dimittet vobis peccata vestra*. If you forgyue not, your father of heuen wyll not forgyue you your synnes. Also if thou  
 [Fol. 87.] doo not forgyue other, thou shalte be founde a lyer, as  
 8 ofte as thou sayeste thy *Pater noster*, where thou sayste :  
 Matt. vi. 12. *Et dimitte nobis debita nostra, sicut et nos dimittimus debitoribus nostris*. And forgyue to vs our dettes, as we forgyue to our detters. By these dettes maye be vnderstande the  
 12 thynges that we oughte to do to god, and doo not them. And also the trespasses and the synne that we haue offended to god, in that we aske mercye of. And if

thou wylte not forgyue, thou mayst not aske mercy of  
 16 ryght. *Eadem mensura, qua mensi fueritis, remetietur vobis.* Matt. vii. 2.  
 The same measure that ye meate other men by, shall be  
 moten vnto you. *Dimittere autem rancorem et maliciam*  
*omnino necessitatis est, dimittere vero actionem et emendam*  
 20 *opus est consilii.* To forgyue all rancour and malyce, that  
 a manne oweth to the in his harte, thou arte bounden  
 of necessitie to forgyue all the hole trespase, or to leaue  
 thyne actyon, or a reasonable mendes. Therefore it is  
 24 but a dede of mēcye if thou so do, and no synne though  
 thou sue the lawe with charytie. But and a manne haue  
 done to the a trespase, and that thou arte gladde that  
 he hathe soo done, that thou mayste haue a quarell, or [Fol. 87b.]  
 28 a matter, or an accyon agaynste hym, and nowe of malyce  
 or yll wyll thou wylte sue hym, rather than for the  
 trespase; nowe thou synnest dedely, bycause thou doest  
 rather of malyce than for the trespase, and than haste  
 32 thou loste thy charitie, Prouerbiorum .xxxii. *Qui pronus* Prov. xxii. 9.  
*est ad misericordiam, benedicetur.* He that is redy to for-  
 giue, shall be blessed.

171. ¶ *The thyrd maner of almes.*

*Errantem corrigere, et in viam veritatis reducere.* To Three ways  
of correc-  
tion.  
 correce a misdoer, and to brynge hym into the waye of  
 ryghte. It is to be vnderstand, that there be thre maner  
 4 of corrections.

¶ The fyrste correction is of an ennemye, the seconde First, as an  
enemy.  
 is of a frynde, and the thyrd correction is of a Iustyce.  
 The fyrste saythe Chrisostome, *Corripe non vt hostis* Chrysostom.  
 8 *expetens vindictam, sed vt medicus instituens medicinam.*  
 Correce not as an enemye doinge vengeance, but as  
 a phisicyon or surgyon, mynstringe or gyuyng a medi-  
 cyne. To the seconde saythe Salomon. *Plus proficit* Secondly, as  
a friend.  
 12 *amica correctio, quam correctio turbulenta.* A frendelye

- [Fol. 88.] correction profyteth more than a troublous correction. For yf thou speke courteysly to a man that hath offended, and with sweete wordes of compassion, he shall rather  
 16 be conuerted by theym, than with hye wordes of great  
 Isidore. punysshement. And Isodorus saythe, *Qui per verba blanda castigatus non corrigitur, acrius necesse est, vt arguatur.* He that wylle not be chastysed by fayre wordes, it is  
 20 necessary that he be more hardlyer and straitlyer reproued  
 Jerome. or punysshed. To the thyrde saythe sayncte Ierome, *Equum iudicium est, vbi non persona sed opera considerantur.*  
 Thirdly, as a judge. There is an euen Iugemente, where the personne is not  
 24 regarded, but the warkes are consydered. And alsoo hit  
 Matt. xvi. 27. is wrytten. *Reddet unicuique iuxta opera sua.* He shall yelde vnto euery manne after his workes. And sayncte  
 Augustine. Augustyne saythe, *Sicut meliores sunt, quos corrigit amor, ita plures sunt quos corrigit timor.* As those be better,  
 28 that be chastysed by loue, soo there be many moo that be chastysed by feare. For and they feared not the punysshement of the lawe, there wolde be but a fewe  
 Gregory. 32 chastysed by loue. And saynte Gregory sayth, *Facientis procul dubio culpam habet, qui quod potest corrigere negligit emendare, et illicita non prohibere consensus erroris est.* He  
 [Fol. 88b.] that maye correcke, and dothe not, he taketh the offence  
 36 to hym-selfe of the dede; and he that dothe not forbede vnlawefull thynges, consenteth to the same, &c.

**172. ¶ What is the greattest offence that a manne may doo and offende god in.**

- In myne opynyon, it is to be in despayre of the mercye of god. And therefore what soo euer thou haue doone or offended god, in worde, warke, thought, or dede, be  
 Isidore. 4 neuer in despayre for it; for Isodorus saythe, *Qui veniam de peccato desperat, plus de desperatione peccat quam de culpa cadit.* He that despayreth to haue forgyuenes of his synnes, he synneth more in despayrynge than he dyd in

- 8 the synne doynge. For saynte Iherome sayth, *Magis* Jerome.  
*offendebat Iudas deum in hoc quod<sup>1</sup> suspendebat, quam in*  
*hoc, quod eum tradidit:* Judas offended god more in  
 that that he hanged hym-selfe, than he dydde whanne he  
 12 betrayed god. For god sayth in his gospell, *Nolo mortem* Ezek. xxxiii.  
*peccatoris, sed magis ut conuertatur et viuat.* I wyll not the II.  
 deathe of a synner, but rather that he maye be conuerted [Fol. 89.]  
 and lyue. And also he saythe, *Non veni vocare iustos,* Luke v. 32.  
 16 *sed peccatores ad penitentiam.* I am not comen to call  
 ryghtwyse men, but to call synners to do penaunce.  
 For thou canste not so soone crye god mercy with thy  
 harte, but he is as redye to chaunge his sentence, and to  
 20 graunte the mercy and forgyuenes of all thy synnes. For  
 saynte Austyne saythe, *Sicut scintilia [sic] ignis in medio* Augustine.  
*maris, sic omnis impietas viri ad misericordiam dei.* As a  
 sparke of fyre is in comparison able to drye vppe all the  
 24 water in the se, noo more is all the wyckednes of man  
 vnto the me[r]cyfulnes of god. And therefore it is conueny-  
 ent that a manne shulde be penytent, contryte, and aske  
 god mercye and forgyuenesse of his synnes and offences,  
 28 that he hath done; wherof speketh Chrysost[o]me, *Nemo* Chrysostom.  
*ad deum aliquando flens accessit quod non postulauerit accepit.*  
 No man hath gone any tyme wepynge to god, but he  
 hath taken or had that thyng that he hath asked. And  
 32 sayncte Bernarde saythe, *Plus cruciant lacrimae peccatoris* Bernard.  
*diabolum quam omne genus tormentorum.* The teares of a  
 synner tourmenteth the deuyll more, than all other kyndes  
 of turmentes. And sayncte Austyne saythe, *Acriores* Augustine.  
 36 *dolores demonibus non inferrimus, quam cum peccata nostra* [Fol. 89b.]  
*penitendo et confitendo plangimus.* We canne not doo more  
 sharper sorowes to the dyuell, than whan we wayle or  
 wepe in confessyon, and doynge of penaunce. And  
 40 that maye be well proued by Mary Magdaleyn, Mary  
 whanne she kneled downe and cryed god mercye, and Magdalen.  
 kyste his fete, and wasshed theym with the teares of

her eyen, and wyped them with the heare of her  
 44 heed, to whom our lorde sayde, as in his gospell,  
 Luke vii. 48. *Dimittuntur tibi peccata tua.* Thy synnes are forgyuen  
 Luke vii. 50. to the; and also he sayde to her: *Fides te saluam fecit,*  
*vade in pace.* Thy faythe hath saued the, goo thou in  
 48 peace. To the whiche mercy and peace I besech  
 almyghty Iesu brynge all chrysten soules. Amen.

The author's  
 protestation.

**B**E it knowen to all men bothe spirytual and tem-  
 porall, that I make protestacion before god and man,  
 52 that I entende not to wryte any-thinge that is or  
 maye be contrary to the faythe of Chryste and al holy  
 church. But I am redye to reuoke my sayenge, if  
 any-thinge have passed my mouthe for wante of lernynge,  
 56 and to submytte my-selfe to correction, and my boke  
 to reformatyon. And as touchynge the poyntes of  
 [Fol. 90.] husbandry, and of other artycles conteyned in this  
 present boke, I wyll not saye that it is the beste waye  
 60 and wyll serue beste in all places, but I saye it is the  
 best way that euer I coude proue by experyence, the  
 whiche haue ben an householder this .xl. yeres and  
 more. And haue assaied many and dyuers wayes, and  
 64 done my dyligence to proue by experyence which shuld  
 be the beste waye.

The author's  
 experience  
 of forty  
 years as a  
 householder.

### ¶ The Auctour.

The author's  
 address to  
 his book.

¶ Go, lyttell quere, and recommede me  
 To all that this treatyse shall se, here, or rede;  
 Prayenge them therwith content to be  
 4 And to amende it in places, where as is nede:  
 Of eloquence, they may perceyue I want the sede,  
 And rethoryke, in me doth not abounde,  
 Wherefore I have sowed, such sedes as I found.

**Finis.**

¶ Thus endeth this ryghte profytable boke  
of husbandry, compyled sometyme by may-  
ster Fitz-herbarde, of charytie and good zele  
that he bare to the weale of this mooste  
noble realme, whiche he dydde not  
in his youthe, but after he had  
exercysed husbandry, with  
greate experyence,  
xl. yeres.



¶ Imprynted at London in fletestrete,  
in the house of Thomas Ber-  
-thelet, nere to the condite  
at the sygne of Lu-  
-crece. Cum pri-  
-uilegio.



[Fol. 90b.]

This book  
was com-  
piled by  
Master  
Fitzherbert.



## NOTES.

---

These Notes are principally concerned with the numerous variations exhibited in the edition printed by I. R. in 1598. See the Preface.

The references are to the *Sections* and *lines*, as numbered.

---

**Prologue**; lines 2, 6. See Job, v. 7; 2 Thess. iii. 10.

15. The allusion is to Caxton's Book of the Chess; see the description of it in Ames' Typographical Antiquities, ed. Dibdin, i. 36, where woodcuts will be found representing the several pieces.

20. *iudges*. Caxton calls them *rooks*, as at present, but he describes them as being vicars and legates of the king, i.e. as occupying the position of judges.

*yomenne*, pawns. In Caxton, we find the division of pawns into eight classes (answering to the eight pawns on each side), in which the king's rook's pawn represents the *husbandman*. The next in order, the king's knight's pawn, is the *smith*; after which, in due order, we find the *notary*, *merchant*, *physician*, *taxverner*, *guard* (or watchman), and the *ribald* or dice-player, whose character is not well spoken of. This eight-fold division seems to me to have suggested the well-known formula which divides men into the eight classes of 'soldier, sailor, tinker, tailor, gentleman, apothecary, ploughboy, thief;' which is sometimes otherwise varied. The German formula is. 'Edelmann, Bettelman, Amtmann, Pastor, Kaufmann, Laufmann, Maler, Major;' also, be it observed, eight-fold. Our soldier, tinker, tailor, apothecary, ploughboy, and thief, may be imagined to correspond, with sufficient exactitude, to Caxton's guard, smith, merchant, physician, husbandman, and ribald.

27. *Remytte*, leave. A word is evidently omitted; we must supply *to* after *as*, or else substitute *to* for *as*. In the Book of Surveying, ch. ix, we find, "I remytte that to menne of lawe;" and again, in ch. xii, "I remytte all those poyntes to menne of lawe." See also sect. 7, l. 14.

1. 1. For the manner in which I. R. rewrites this section, see the Preface.

2. 5. *Chylturne*. As to the sense, we find, in the Book of Surveying, c. 37, the following. "Chylturne grounde and flyntyte grounde be light groundes and drye, and full of small stones, and chalke grounde is moche of the same nature, and they wyll weare and washe awaye with water."

6. *Meane erthe*, earth of ordinary character. *Mean* is moderate, ordinary. I. R. alters it to '*maine* earth,' which was probably not intended. After *marle*, he inserts—"some neither Sand nor Clay, but like a mixture of both, yet neither, which is called a Hassell ground."

9. I. R. has—"In Sommerset-shiere, Dawset-shiere, and Gloster-shiere."

*Zelcester*. The old character *ȝ*, which had the force of *y* at the beginning of a word,<sup>1</sup> was often printed as *Z*, by confusion. Bishop Percy used to print such ludicrous forms as *zow*, *zour*, instead of *yow*, *your*. I conclude that *Zelcester* = *Yelcester*, i.e. Ilchester. The form occurs again in sect. 27, l. 17.

16. *many other places*. J. R. says—"in some parte of Hartford-shiere, Sussex, and Cornwall."

24. *aslope*] I. R. has *a flote. gyue out*, i.e. spread out, are too obtuse.

26. I. R. says—"In Cambridge-shiere, Huntington-shiere, Bedford-shiere, and for the most part of Northampton-shiere, theyr Ploughes haue but one hale. In Leister-shiere, Lankishiere, Yorkshiere, Lincolnshiere, and Notingham-shiere, they haue two; for all other Countries [*counties*] vnamed, there is none of them but plow with some of these Ploughes before-mentioned."

3. 1. The parts of a plough are enumerated in Gervase Markham's Complete Husbandman (1614), which is quoted at length in Rogers's Hist. of Agriculture and Prices, vol. i. p. 534. It is probable that the plough, as described by Fitzherbert, did not materially differ from that in use in 1614.

The principal parts, according to Markham, are as follows.

(1). 'The *ploughbeam*, a large and long piece of timber, which forms an arch for the other parts of the plough.' It is, says Fitzherbert, the long beam above, which is slightly bent. The plough-sheath, the coulter, and the plough-foot, are all mortised into it, pointing downwards.

(2). 'The *skeath* (i.e. *sheath*), a piece of wood two and a half feet long, eight inches broad, and two inches thick, which is mortised into the beam, and sloping forwards below it.' Fitzherbert says it is a thin piece of dry oak, fixed both in the plough-beam and the share-beam, and is the chief 'band,' i.e. strengthening piece or support, of the whole plough. By 'thin,' he must mean that it is thin (2 inches) in proportion to its breadth (8 inches); it is necessary that it should be very strong, as it holds the implement together.

(3). 'The plough's *principal hale* on the left hand, a long bent piece of wood, somewhat strong in the midst, and so slender at the upper end that a man may easily gripe it.' This is Fitzherbert's *plough-tail* (l. 16), which he says is mortised into the sharebeam behind, and pinned to the ploughbeam behind also. The ploughman holds it in his *left* hand. It is also called the *ploughstart*; where *start* means *tail*, as in *red-start*.

(4). 'The *plough-head*, which is fixed with the skeath and the hale, all at one instant, into two several mortise-holes; a flat piece of timber, about three feet in length, seven inches in breadth, and two and a half in thickness, and having two nicks towards the head of the plough.' This is the same as what Fitzherbert calls the *sharebeam*; see the explanation in sect. 2, l. 10.

(5). 'The *plough-spindles*, two round pieces of wood which couple the hailes [*handles*] together.' These are what Fitzherbert calls the *rough staves*; see l. 35.

(6). 'The *right-hand hale*, through which the other end of the spindles run, much more slender than the left-hand hale, because no force is put on it.' This is Fitzherbert's *plough-stilt*; see l. 21.

(7). The *plough-rest*, a small piece of wood, fixed at one end in the further nick

<sup>1</sup> Such is the general rule; but in Lowland Scotch, we have *Dalziel*, *Menzies*, pronounced as *Dalyell*, *Menyies*, i.e. with *z* for *y* in the middle of a word, where it usually has the force of *gh*.

of the plough-head, and on the other end to the right-hand hale.' 'In the Middle Ages,' says Prof. Rogers, 'it appears that this part was made of iron, and that it was occasionally double.' We must remember that *plough-head* means the *share-beam*.

(8). 'The *shelboard* [i.e. shield-board], a board of more than an inch thick, covering the right side of the plough, and fastened with two strong wooden pins to the skeath and right-hand hale.'

(9). 'The *coulter*, a long piece of iron made sharp at one end, passing on one side by a mortise-hole through the beam, and held in place by an iron ring which winds round the beam and strengthens it.' Fitzherbert's description is slightly different; see l. 48. The use of the coulter is to make the first incision into the earth; it precedes the share, which follows it and completes its work.

(10). 'The *share*. If this be needed for a mixed earth, it is made without a wing, or with a small one only: if, however, it be needed for a deep or stiff clay, it should be made with a large wing or an outer point.'

(11). 'The *plough-foot*. This is an iron implement, passed through a mortise-hole, and fastened at the farther end of the beam by a wedge or two, so that the husbandman may at his discretion set it higher or lower; the use being to give the plough earth or to put it from the earth, for the more it is driven downward the more it raises the beam from the ground and makes the irons forsake the earth, and the more it is driven upward, the more it lets down the beam and makes the irons bite the ground.' Fitzherbert well describes it as 'a stay to order of what deepness the plough shall go.' The word *ploughfote* occurs in *Piers Plowman*, B. vi. 105; see my notes to that poem, vol. iv. p. 161. This part of the plough was also called a *plough-shoe* (in Latin, *ferripedalis*); see Rogers (as above), p. 538. In a modern plough, the plough-foot is generally replaced by small wheels. I may remark that it was placed in front, before the coulter.

If we compare the preceding account with that given by Fitzherbert, we shall see that the two nearly agree. Fitzherbert's *plough-beam*, *plough-sheath*, and *plough-tail* are Nos. 1, 2, and 3 above; his *stilt*, *rest*, and *shieldboard* are Nos. 6, 7, and 8; his *rough staves*, *plough-foot*, *share*, and *coulter*, are Nos. 5, 11, 10, and 9. But he has three additional terms, viz. the *sharebeam*, which is the wooden frame for the *share*, and is called by Markham the *plough-head* (No. 4). Secondly, the *fen-board*, i.e. *mud-board*, covering the *left* side of the plough, and fastened to the *left* of the sheath and the *left* hale, much as the shield-board is fastened to the *right* of the sheath and the *right* hale. Lastly, the *plough-car*, defined as 'three pieces of iron, nailed fast to the right side of the plough-beam,' for which poor men substituted 'a crooked piece of wood pinned fast to the plough-beam.' What was the use of this appendage we are not expressly told; but it seems to have been used for fastening the trace to, for draught; see 4. 34.

Fitzherbert also notices the *plough-mal*, i.e. plough-mall or plough-mallet (l. 55), which seems to have consisted of a head of hard wood and a 'pynne,' or handle, and to have been loosely stuck into the plough-beam by passing the handle through 'an augurs bore,' i.e. through a hole bored in the beam by an augur for this especial purpose. This was no real *part* of the plough, but only a tool conveniently kept at hand. He does not, however, mention the plough-staff (or akerstaff), which was 'a pole shod with a flat iron, the purpose of which

was to clear the mould-board from any stiff earth which might cling to it while the plough was at work'; Rogers, as above, p. 539. This was originally held in the right hand (see my notes to P. Plowman); but I think it likely that, when a second handle, or *stilt*, came into use, the plough-staff was given up. Wright's Prov. Glossary gives "*mell, mellet*, a square piece of wood fitted with a handle, a mallet."

10. I. R. says of the *sharbeame*, that "in some Countries it is called the plough-head." Fitzherbert has already said this, see 2. 10.

12. *Oke*] Oake or Ashe; I. R.

15. I. R. says of the *plough-tayle*, that "in many Countries [it is] called the Plough-hale, of which they haue two, but the other is fastened to the rough staues and the shelboard." The other *hale* is the *plough-stilt*.

25. *sheldbrede*] Shelboard; I. R.

27. *fenbrede*] Senbred; I. R. This is wrong.

32. *to come past*] compasse; I. R.

34. *roughe*] long; I. R.

49. *bende*, i.e. bent] broad; I. R. This is inappropriate, for it is somewhat narrow, viz. of the breadth of three inches; see line 52.

55. *plough-mal*] Plough Maule; I. R. As to the parts of a plough, cf. Tusser's Husbandry, 17. 10, 11; and see above, note to 3. 1.

4. 14. *slot-wedges*] flote wedges; I. R. I. R. does not seem to have understood it, as he alters *slot* to *flatte* in the two lines following.

19. After *erthe*, I. R. has—"so that it may, as the best experienced Plow-men say, kill a worme, or els it goeth not truly." *Worme* is clearly right. He further inserts—"The poynt of your Culture, and the poynt of your Share, must runne both in one leuell, so that they may cutte both in one instant, chiefly if the ground be stiffe and tough; but if it be in a light land, then if the point of your Culture be a little longer it shall be so much the better, and in such light groundes, let your Culture be somewhat sickell-wise bowed, for the finer cutting, but in tough Clay ground it ought to be as straight as may be."

26. *payreth*] hurteth; I. R. This is a gloss.

29. *practyue*] practise; I. R.<sup>1</sup>

33. *bende*] band. But *bende* probably means 'bent piece.'

35. *he*] you (throughout). This shews that this idiomatic use of *he* was obsolescent in 1598.

46. *coke*] Cocke.

58. I. R. adds—"In diuers Countries, as namely in Cambridgshiere, Hunting-ton, Hartford, Bedford, and Northampton, the share is alwayes nayled with certaine nayles vnto the shelboard, to which I am not so well affected, because by that meanes the shelboard can neuer be turnd, or after he is once worne be [*sic*] for other purpose, whereas in the Northerne partes of this Land, the share being only fastned in his socket to the Plough-head, which may at ease be done with a crooked horne of a Ramme, which being put ouer the poynt of the share, may be knocked fast at ones pleasure, the shelboard being worne at the one end may be taken off, and the other end set forward, which will as sufficiently serue as euer it did before, yeelding to the Plough-man a double profit."

<sup>1</sup> I shall in future drop the initials "I. R." in these collations. It will be understood that these various readings are all from the same source.

5. 1. *But or he*] Before we.  
 2. *geare*] implements. A genteel improvement! So again in l. 45.  
 4. *stylkynges, wrethyng-temes*] stiling wrethen teames.  
 6. *sleues*] cleuisse. *pykforke*] Pitchforke.  
 9. *fellyes*] follies (!). 10. *fettred*] fettered or tyed.  
 17. *soule*] sole.  
 19. *lyn-pinnes*] limpins.  
 23. *pikstaues*] pickstaues, all which are best of Ashe.  
 24. *hombers*] humbers. *holmes whyted, tresses*] holmes, withed traces.  
 29. *or kyddes, or suche other*] faggots, or Kids.  
 6. 5. I. R. adds—"yet in all *Virgils* writing the Oxe-plough is most preferred."  
 There are other unimportant variations here.  
 17. *teddered*] teathered.  
 18. *hades*] hadds.  
 24. *gere that they shal*] harnes and tyer they.  
 27. *hey*] hay mingled, which Plough-men call bendfoder.  
 28. *and they haue, &c.*] and for shooes for the most part that cost in them is sau'd, except it be for some long iourney, or in stony wayes for feare of surbayting.  
 30. *lyttell worthe*] worth nothing, except for a kennell of noyse-begetting Hounds.  
 32. *ii. s.*] tenne shillings.  
 7. I. R. omits this section altogether.  
 8. I. R. greatly expands this section, after the following manner.

**Chapter 8. ¶ How a man should plough all manner of Lands all times of the yeare.**

Now that I haue prescribed the manner to make and temper the most or all the sorts of Ploughs, it shall next seeme expedient for me to show the manner and time of the yeare in which a man ought to Plough, and for the better vnderstanding of the ignorant, I will begin at the beginning of the yeare, and so succede downe-ward: After the feast of *Epiphanie* it is time for a Husbandman to goe to Plough, to wit, if your ground be a stiffe and a tough clay, then shall you begin and Plough your Pease-earth, which is, where you had your Wheate, Rye, and Barley, the yeere before: this ground being ploughed, you shall let it so lye, which is called bayting some fiue or sixe dayes, that it may receaue a frost or two, which frost will so lighten and deuide the earth, that when you shall come to harrow it, it will runne to a very good mold, that otherwise it would neuer doe. If your ground be naturally light and sandy, then may you immediatly vpon your ploughing sowe without giuing your ground any bayte at all. When your Pease earth is sowne, and the Spring is creeping on: then if you will follow *Virgils* famous principles, begin to fallow your ground which must rest that yeare. In the beginning of Lent sow your Barley vpon clay grounds, but in hote sandy grounds, if you stay a moneth or more longer it will be much the better. At mid-sommer stirre vp a-new, that is, Plow againe your fallow ground: & before the rising of the North-starre, which is eleuen dayes before the *Æquinocial Autumnal*, or the thirteenth of September, then sow your Wheate and Rye, and these be the seasons and the graynes to sow, except Oates, which is alwayes to be vsed in like manner as Barley is. If you haue any ley ground to fallow or breake vp for to sowe Oates vpon, then let that be the first thing you take in hand, that

the grasse and the mosse may be rot in it, and let your Plough runne a deepe square furrow, and in all manner of ploughing, see that your eye, your hand, and your foote agree, and be alwaies ready one to serue another, and to turne vp so much mold and to lay it flatte that it reare not an edge : for if it stand vp vpon an edge, the grasse and mosse can neuer kindly rotte, which being vsed as it should, is an excellent manuring.

If you sowe Winter-corne, as eyther Wheate or Rye vpon swarth ground, looke how much Corne toucheth the mosse, so much will be drowned and cannot spring, the mosse in his owne nature dooth keepe so much wette in it selfe. In some Countries, if a man plow deepe, hee shal plough past the good ground, and so haue little Corne, but that Country in my iudgement is not fitte for tyllage, but rather thereto to reare and breede Cattell, as Oxen, Kine, or Sheepe, or els they must goe beate their lands with Mattocks, as they doo in many places of Cornwall, and in some places of Deuonshire. The manner of plowing land is in three formes : eyther they be great Lands, as with high ridges and deepe furrowes, as in all the North parts of this Land, and in some sotherne parts also, or els flatte and plaine, without ridge or furrow, as in most parts of Cambridge-shiere : or els in little Lands, no Land containing aboue two or three furrowes, as in Middlesex, Essex, and Hartfordshire.

For the first, it is needfull, where the grounde is stife, tough, and binding, beeing alwaies capable of much wette, that if the Lands did not lie hie, not onely would the fatnesse choake the Corne ere it could come foorth, but also the colde soaking wette, would confound the vigor and strengthe of the seede. For the second, that is good where the ground is somewhat light, and giuen to barrennesse : so that what forest [*read* forst] vertue soeuer you thrust into the ground, either by manure or otherwise, the Land lying flatte and plaine, shall still retaine it, not suffering it as els it would to wash away with euery shower. For the last, that is, where the grounde is both barren, cold, and stiffe : if there you plough in large Lands, the wether and season will so binde it together, that the seede shall burst, but not finde any passage to sproute. Againe, such ground is subiect to much weede, besides, if your lands should be any greater, you should neuer possibly come to weede them, eyther as they would or they should be done.

9. I. R. alters this section, noting—"Neuer sowe Pease or Beanes on a light, hote sand ground, for that will neuer beare them, but for the Beane, the extreamest and the stiffest ground is the best. If it bee lesse stiffe, then the mingled ware<sup>1</sup> is best, as Pease and Beanes well sorted. If it bee neither stiffe nor light, then cleane Pease is the best, for they wil prosper most kindliest."

13. I. R. adds—"Pease are an excellent seede, and inrich ground as much as the light manuring : which is the reason, that in many places of Lincoln-shiere, and els where, sowing their inam Wheate where theyr Pease grew, they haue the finest Corne."

10. 1—9. Varied by I. R.

13. *kedlokes*] Kellocks (*but elsewhere* Kedlocks).

41. I. R. adds—"because the freshnes of the molde is to the seede very comfortable."

11. 11. *wonders*] wonderous (which is the later form). The whole of this

<sup>1</sup> Cf. the name *pod-ware*, as applied to beans and peas. See Halliwell.

section is re-written, merely to alter the language. Fitzherbert speaks again of 'the seed of discretion' in the Book of Surveying, c. 39.

12. 8. *strykes in other places*] two Northerne strikes. And as the measure Northward is greater, so are their Akers larger.

13. *quarter*] quarter, or halfe a seame.

31. *Christmasse*] Christmas, as for the most part Northward, or generally vpon fat clay grounds.

13. 7. *landes*] land and the balke.

18. *sprot-barleye*] sport-Barley. So also in l. 19.

28. *lyke pecke-whete*] like to an eare of Wheate.

40. I. R. adds—"but how so euer the season of the yeare is, that Barley naturally of it selfe is a withered, deepe, yellow Corne, that yeldeth much bran, & but litle flower. Barley for the most part chiefly in clay grounds would be sown vnder furrow, that is, a cast or two about the Land, then ploughed, then sowne agayne, and so harrowed."

14. 15. I. R. adds—"These are for the most barranest Heath or forrest ground that may be, as in Darbishiere, where they call them Skeyggs, and not Oates."

\*.\* After section 14, I. R. introduces section 34, to bring all the kinds of sowing together.

15. This is section 17 in the edition of 1598.

7. *moche*] bigge (which is a gloss). So also in l. 24.

8. *shots*] flores. But this can hardly be right. See below.

11. *slot*] slope. But this can hardly be right. It is clear that the right word is *slote*, with the sense of 'cross-bar,' the *bulls* being the thicker bars of the harrow.

13. *withe*] withy. 24. *sloted and tind*] floted and tyned.

27. *about Ryppon*] in Nottinghamshire and more Northward.

28. *bulder-stones*] bolder-stones. Also spelt *bulder-stones* in the Book on Surveying, c. 40.

41. *hombers*] humbers. *withed*] writhed.

42. *tresses*] traces (in both places).

50. *after a shoure*, &c.] with great roles of wood, which *Virgill* much commends, and doubtless is very good after a shower of raine, to make the ground euen to mow. And note that the dryer your Lands be when you clot them, the sooner wil your clots break, and the more mold you shall haue.

16. 3. *for whete*, &c.] on which fallowes the next yeare following, you shall sow your Rye, Wheat and Barly.

24. *stere*] stirre (which is a later form).

35. I. R. adds—"To fallow withall, sixe Oxen, or sixe Horses are no more then sufficient."

17. 29. I. R. adds—"Also let not your heapes stand too long ere they be spread, for if they doo, the goodnesse of your manure, chiefly if it take a shower of raine, will runne into the ground where the heape stands, and the rest when it is spread will little profit."

29-35. I. R. makes a new section of this, headed "Chapter 20. Of the diuers kinds of Manure, and which is the best." It is as follows.

There be diuers sorts of Manures, and first of those that bee worst, as Swines dunge, which Manure breedeth and bringeth vp thistles; the scourings of Hay-barnes or Corne barnes, which bringeth vp sundry weedes and quirks [quicks?];

and rotten Chaffe, which diuers vse, but brings little good. The shoueling of highwayes and streetes is very good, chiefly for Barley. Horse-dunge is reasonable. The dunge of all maner of Cattel that chew the cudde is most excellent. Doues dunge for colde ground is best of all, but it must be spred very thinne. For grounds that are giuen to riue and chap, ashes is excellent, for they will binde and knit together. Also for such grounds it is most singular to burne the stubble on the ground, which is worth tenne manurings: for it fatneth (saith *Virgill*) the soyle, and yeeldeth a secrete force of nourishment vnto the seede. Also, euery euill is tried out by the fire, and the vnprofitable moisture is forced to sweat out, it giueth a vent and passage for the iuyce that quickeneth the Corne, and it closeth the gaping vaines and holes, of the earth, through which, eyther extreame moysture, extreame heate, or wind, would blast the Corne. Also in Cheshiere, Lankishiere, and other Countreys, they vse for manure a kinde of blewe Marble-like earth, which they call Marle. This is for those Countries an excellent manure, and though it be exceeding chargeable, yet through good neighbour-hood it quiteth the cost: for if you manure your groundes once in seauen or twelue yeares, it is sufficient, and look how many yeares he beareth Corne, so many yeares he will beare grasse, and that plenty. Straw layd to rot in the Winter, is good dung.

30. *sholynges*; i.e. shovellings. Note "the *shoueling* of highwayes" in the extract given just above.

18. 3. *flyte*] shift (which is a gloss). So also in l. 28.

10. *kelles begonne*] kells be gone. This shews that the reading *begonne* in the original is a misprint for *be gone*.

17. *appeyreth them sore*] abateth them much.

23. *goynge vppon*] treading or going upon with their feete.

31. *appeyre*] abate or diminish.

33. *for*] from. This shews that the old idiomatic use of *for* (= against) was obsolescent in 1598.

19. 5. *charte*] Cart. And perhaps we should read *carte* in the text; the meaning of *charte* is, of course, *cart*.

8. Here I. R. inserts—"And for this purpose of carrying, I take the Horse-Cart to be best, because they be most nimble, and goe with best speede; & if the Horses be good, they will not at any time loose company with his neighbours."

20. 3. *cocledrake*] Cockell, Drake. And such should be the reading; for see ll. 13, 17.

4. *darnolde*] Darnell. *gouldes*] Golds. *haudoddes*] Hadods.

6. *roughe*] tough. 23. *sterie*] stalke (a gloss).

32. *is*] are. Fitzherbert makes *is* agree with *one*.

47. *dee-nettles*] Dee, Nettels (wrongly).

21. 15. *in the reane*] away. I. R. omits the rest, down to *wyddre*.

22. 10. *at-after none*] in the after-noon. But *at-after* is an old form, signifying much the same as *after*. See Glossary.

12. *beytynge*] resting. At the end of the section, I. R. adds—"For this stirring foure horses are sufficient."

23. 8. *wyddrynge*] withering (the later form).

11. *chowe*] chewe. 16. *swathe*] swaith.

17. *mane*] man (!). The sense is, I suppose, a ridge of grass, which is likened to a horse's mane.

20. *moldywarpe-hills*] Mole-hills. *styckes*] sticks and stones.

In the Book on Surveying, c. 25, we are told that the best way to spread 'mouldy-warpe hilles] is by bush-harrowing.

24. 3. *beyked*] keyed (which I suspect to be nonsense). In line 12, *beykyng* is altered to *baking*.

15. *hasell and withee*] Hassell or Withy.

19. *and let his warke*] whereby he shall hinder his worke.

21. *and*] if (a gloss of an obsolescent conjunction). So again in sect. 25, l. 16.

25. 7. *ouer*] vpper. See the Glossary.

22. *crofote*] Crow-foote.

27. After *wyll*, I. R. inserts "as they say."

32. *twon*] twined (the weak form).

26. 5. I. R. alters this so as to give a different sense—"when it is mowne, it will be so fast bound that no man can gather it so cleane but there wil be great losse." This is contradictory, and probably he missed the word *not*.

27. 17. I. R. omits the phrase—"about Zelcestre and Martok."

28. 13. *And whan the barley, &c.*] and when the Barley is lead away, the Land must be raked with a great Rake with yron teeth, made fast about a mans necke with a string, and so drawne vp and downe the Lande, or els much Barley wil be lost. If Barley or Oates be layd through winde or ill weather, then it must needes be shorne, els not. The binding of barley in sheaues is very profitable, yet many that haue great crops will not attend so great trouble, but as soone as it is mowne make it in cocks like hay, and so carry it home: yet must they haue good respect vnto it, for if it bee full of weede and greeues (*sic, for* greenes), then must it lye till they be withered, or els it will burne in the mow.

29. 2. *sickles*] steeles. After *staffe-hokes*, I. R. adds—"and some mow downe with Sythes."

4. *on repes*] in reaps.

11. *codde*] codds. This is a better reading.

30. 7. *to peruse*] peruse. This early use of *peruse* in the sense of go through, lit. use up thoroughly, should be noted. It occurs again in the Book of Surveying. capp. 19, 24; see note to 33. 7.

18. As to the fall of the tenth part of the angels, see my notes to P. Plowman.

21. After *truely*, I. R. adds—"but how eyther of the sayings hold with vnconscionable impropriations, adiudge the learned, let me imagine."

31. 3. *halfe-throne*] halfe-theame (*sic*).

32. 5. *reke*] Reeke, stack, or houell. 6. *scaffolde*] houell; and in ll. 9, 11.

7. *hedged for*] hedged or paled from.

11. *shepe or catel*] Sheep, Cattel, Horse, Carts, Wains, or Ploughs.

33. 3. *meane*] reasonable. 4. *ebbe*] shallow.

6. *raane*] raine of balke.

33. 7. So also in the Book of Surveying, c. 24. "And if it so be, than take thy ploughe, and begyn to plowe a forowe in the myddes of the syde of the land, and cast it downe as yf thou shulde falowe it, and so pervse both sydes tyl the rygge be cast down, and than take thy plough agayn, and begyn to plowe where thou dyddest plowe fyrste, and rygge all the remeynant upwarde, and so shalt thou

bothe cast thy landes, and rigge them, and all at one plowyng. And this wyl make the lande to lye rounde, the whyche is good bothe for corne and grasse."

34. This is Chapter 15 in I. R.'s edition. After *rye* (l. 2), I. R. adds—"chiefely, if your ground be rich, clayie, and cold, but if it be dry and hote, then may you stay the latter season, as till the latter end of October."

6. After *fallowe*, I. R. adds—"and plow it vnder without harrowing."

8. After *yere*, I. R. adds—"as in other places euey third yeere, for the one haue four fieldes, the other three."

23. *whyte wheate*] Oygrane Wheate. So in l. 31 below, he has "Oygrane or white Wheate."

25. *annis*] anns; so also in l. 29, and again in ll. 33, 36, 40, 42; we should rather have expected the spelling *auns*.

33. *and wyll make white breed*] it yeeldeth the finest flower of all. These three sorts of Wheat must euer bee sowne eyther on the Pease stubble, or on a fallow ground that is not very proud or rich, for too rich ground for these Wheats wil make them mildewe and not prosper.

35. After *whyte wheate*, I. R. adds—"but they are deceaued."

38. *rudeste*] ruddiest. This is clearly the right sense.

43. *flyntered*] flintred. At the end of the section I. R. adds a long piece, as follows.

"Lastly, there is another Wheat, which is called hole-straw Wheat; it hath the largest eare of al Wheats, the boldest Corne, and yeeldeth the most, the finest, though not the whitest floure; it is foure-square, and hath short anns; the straw is not hollow, but hath a strong pith throughout, by reason wherof in his growth no weather whatsoever can beare him downe, but still he will stand and prosper; his straw yeeldeth as good thatch as Reeds, a singular profit for a Husbandman: and it is an excellent fewell to bake or brew with, euen as good as Gorsse or Whins: Onely Cattell will not eate it, nor is it good for litter; this of all Wheats is the best: these last named are to be sowne on the fallow ground, and the better the ground is, the better they will prosper.

When you sowe your Rye choose a dry season, for small wet killeth Rye. Rie, as the old husbands say, will drowne in the Hopper, that is, if in the Hopper hee catch a shower, his vigor is slaine. Wherefore the drier his mold, is the better, which is the cause that the hote, dry, and light sand is onely for Rye most excellent: his mold must harrow small like a Garden-bed, for the smallest clot hindereth his comming vp; his sprout is so small and tender.

Here I. R. inserts a whole chapter, as follows.

### Chapter 16.

#### ¶ How to make barraine ground bring fourth good Corne.

If thy ground be barraine and hard, yeelding nothing but ill Hay of insuing profit, then shal it be necessary for thee to vse these secrets in Art which is most auailable. And first for thy Pease, Beanes, Barley, and Oates, if thou sowest any of them: sowe them vpon the eight day of April, which is the Equinoctiall vernall,<sup>1</sup> when *Libra*<sup>2</sup> draweth the houres of the day and night to an euen and

<sup>1</sup> Printed—"Vernall. When." This cuts the sentence in half, and makes nonsense.

<sup>2</sup> A singular mistake; he means *Aries*.

iust proportion, and what Corne is so sowne prospereth greatly: but if thou wilt be assured that no Corne thou sowest shall faile, then take Salt-peeter and mingle with thy Corne, and sow it, and thy labor shall neuer be frustrate. For want of it, take the black dreggs of Oyle, and wette thy seede ere thou sow it, and it shall vndoubtedly spring vp. If thou hast none of these, then take Pigeons dunge, and mingle it with thy seede in thy hopper, and sow it: though it be not so good as the other, yet is the profitable vertue wonderfull.

**35. 7. *Kente*] Kent, and Hartfordshire.**

8. *gise*] vse. *Gise* = guise, way, manner, plan. I. R. has "great safety for shedding the Corne," retaining here the old use of *for*.

12. I. R. adds—For your seede, if you will be aduised by me, you shall change it alway once in two or three yeare. For to sow continually one seede bred in one soyle it will decay & grow ill: and in your exchange draw it alwayes from the harder soyle, and being brought into a better, it must the rather prosper.

**36. 3. *reed*] reeded.** This form is wrong, like our use of *wonted* for *wont* (= won-ed).

At the end of this section, I. R. closes his First Booke.

**37. 6.** Here I. R. inserts—Of Sheepe there be two sorts, that is, blacke and white, but the white is the best, for the Wooll they beare there bee of diuers Staples: some long and hairie, as those bredde in barren cold Countries, and that is the worst; some hard, short, and curld, as those bred in woody grounds, and that is better: some long, thicke, soft, and curled, and that is the best of all: and they be bredde vpon fine heathes, where they haue short, dry, and sweet foode. The profit of wooll the world can witnesse, and yeerely your Ewes will bring forth Lambes, which is an other commoditie; and lastly, in some Countries, as in Suffolke, Essex, and Kent, with many other, they milke their Ewes, a gaine equall to the rest. Therefore when you chuse sheepe, elect them big-boand and well-woolld, their colours beeing white. For *Virgill* faines, that *Cynthia*, the Goddess of Chastitie, in whose thoughts could neuer enter impuritie, was enamored of *Endimion* onely through hys flocke of white sheepe. When therefore you haue got a flock of white sheepe, then you must chuse Rams to equall them, for preseruing the breede: your Ram would bee white also, and ouer and beside you must looke in his mouth, and if the rooffe thereof be blacke, then is hee not good: for either hee will then get blacke Lambes, or at least staine theyr fleeces with a duskie colour. The greater the hornes of your Ram is, the worse; for the pollard is the chieffest Ram.

14. *blyssomme or ryde*] blossome and arride.

16. *at the Exaltation of the holye crosse*] in September.

32. I. R. adds—Wherefore be carefull to keepe thy sheepe well, both with hay in Winter as well as with grasse in Sommer. Also in the Winter such Sheepe as thou intendest to fatte and sell, let them either haue straw or fleakes to lie vpon, for the cold earth will both disease them and hinder their feeding.

**38. 3. *trouse*] brouse.** See these words in the glossary.

6, 7. The sense is—and if she (the ewe) will not stand sideways beside the lamb; *i.e.* in such a position that the lamb can approach her side. There is an evident misprint in l. 7, where the original has *ewe* for *lambe*. I. R. tries to make sense by turning *all* into *call*; thus—"and if she wil not stand side-long, call the Ewe and giue her a little hay." This is an evident attempt at making sense by falsify-

ing the grammar of the text; for Fitzherbert does not say "*and* give her," but "*than* gyue her," *i.e.* then give her. Consequently all that precedes the word *than* belongs to the clause containing the supposition.

39. 9. After *theym*, I. R. inserts—Yet *Virgill* aduiseth you in such a case to haue a leather full of sharp poynted nayles, which being put about the musell of the Lambe, if it offer to sucke, it will so pricke the dugges of the Ewe that she will not suffer it, but by that meanes weane it perforce: and by the same deuise you may weane all maner of Cattell whatsoever. See Virg. Georg. iii. 399.

40. 14. *steke*] shutt (which is a gloss).

24. *go belte, grese, i.e.* go and belt them, and grease them. As to *belting*, see the next section. I. R. very stupidly alters the phrase to *goe melt grease*, though he has to retain the word *belt* below.

41. 18. It is hard to make an old dog stoop; *i.e.* it is hard to make him submit to being taught. This occurs in Heywood's Proverbs, 1562 (Hazlitt). In the most insipid way, I. R. alters *to stoupe* into *for Sheepe*, spoiling the whole saying.

43. To *medle terre* is to mix tar. I. R. alters *medle* in the rubric to *melt*, and then substitutes *mingled* for *medled* in l. 1. This is very clumsy.

44. In the rubric, I. R. alters *brome* to *broune*, which is certainly wrong; see the context.

7. *gelly*] Ielly. Yet the spelling with *g* is well enough.

8. *pysse*] pisse or lye. See *lye* in the glossary.

14. *or of faldynge, &c.*] or a folding of some such soft cloth or wooll. It is clear that I. R. did not know the word *faldynge*, or he would not thus have altered the text.

17. *sheydes*] sheeds; *i.e.* partings; see sect. 42, l. 4.

24. *for*] from (as in other places). *For* = against, to prevent.

45. 4. *fyled*] filled. This is wrong; *fyled* means fouled, defiled.

46. 3. *rather*] sooner. I. R. adds—There be diuers waters for this purpose, as water made of Sandiuer and burnt Allom, or the iuyce of Housleeke strained and mingled with Rose-water; or the braines of an hatched, as thus: Take a linnen cloth, and burne it vpon the head of a hatchet, then blow away the ashes, and there wilbe on the hatchets head a kind of oyle, that taken and put in a sheepes eye, is most excellent.

47. 3. *clese*] clawes. 9. *clese*] clea. *Clea* is *claw*; *clese* = *cleas*, claws.

15. *peece of fleshe*] peece of fleame (*i.e.* phlegm).

48. 12. I. R. adds—to the great hinderance of the sale.

49. 1. *pockes*] Pox (the modern spelling).

9. I. R. adds—but if you cannot wash them, then let them blood in the roofes of the mouth, and after they haue left bleeding, giue them a supping of milke and Saffron mingled together.

51. 6. *murtheryng or ouer-pressyng*] smothering or oppressing. And certainly *smothering* seems the right word.

10. I. R. adds—Wash your sheepe in running Riuers, for standing Ponds are ill.

52. 4. *tarboxe*] Tarbox, or bronne salue. Here *bronne* is a misprint for *broune*; and *broune* is a mistake for *brome*. See note to sect. 44 above.

54. 14. After *shepe*, I. R. inserts—salt marshes onely excepted.

22. *kelles vppon the grasse*] kels vpon the grasse like to Spinners webs. (A *spinner* is a spider.)

31. *white snails*] white finells (not clearly printed).

55. 2. *stryndes*] strings (badly). So also in l. 4.

16. *lyttel quikens*] a little quicknes (absurdly). *flokes*] flocks. But *flukes* are meant.

Here I. R. inserts a chapter on goats, as follows.

#### Chapter 20.

##### ¶ Of Goates and their profit or vse.

Thus hauing sufficiently debated touching the choosing, cherishing, and curing of sheep, I thinke it good a little to speake of Goates and their vse : a kinde of Cattell which albe heere in England we estimate not to his worth, yet in other places they be of highest valuation : and the excellent poet *Virgill* in his Countrey muse, draweth them and sheepe to march in one euen equipage. Thus comparing them, the Goate (saith he) yeeldeth in milke three times the quantity a sheepe doth, theyr young ones are more plentifull, for they will haue two or three, and sometimes more, and their beards yearely being shorne and spunne, haue made an excellent during stuffe, which for the continuance, hath made Marriners desirous onely to weare it in their garments, so that though their beards cannot in quantity and fineness be equall with the fleece of the sheepe, yet ioyning their milke and their young ones to their beards, there is no wonderfull difference.

Their manner of keeping, both wintering and sommering, is in the Poets rules the same that the Sheepe hath, onely theyr foulding and feed excepted : for the foulding they are not needfull, and for their feede, Woods are the best, or the toppes of Mountaines : bushie and thorny grounds vnprofitable for any other vse, for the feede of Goates is most excellent. They will obserue custome much better than Sheepe, for beeing but once or twice vsed there-vnto, they will duely every morning and euening come home, to pay theyr due debt or tribute to the milke-paile. Theyr milk is excellent, and a great restorative, principally for a consumption, of what nature soeuer. The fourth howre after the Sun rise, is the best time for Goates to drinke in. For the weaning of young Kidds from their Dams, vse the meanes that you doo with Ewes and Lambes.

Of all Goates that are, *Virgil* most commends the *Cinyphian* Goates, bred by the Towne *Cinyps*, as Cattell of wondrous great commoditie : their disprofit is onely amongst young springs or plants, for they wil crop any young thing that groweth, and hinder the springing thereof, also they wil pill away the barke of Trees, to the spoyle of the trees : yet no more then fallow Deare, or redde Deare will, wherfore where the one is suffered, the other may be tolerated. Cf. *Virg. Georg. iii. 306-317*.

56. 4. *and fookes*] foales, and pigs.

7. *kve*] Kine. And so in l. 2 above.

9. After *wel* I. R. inserts—let thy Cowe be beetle-browed, and sterne of looke, her head and necke big, and from her throate hanging downe to her shanks a large and long dew-lappe ; let her sides be proportionlesse and great, and euery part of her, euen her very foote, so bigge as bigge may be. Let her eares be large and hairie, and her taile long, euen to the grounde, and bushie : if she be spotted with white, or shrewd or wicked with her horne, it is an error, but no fault, for it shewes mettle and goodnes ; in generall, the more bull-like a Cow is, the better she is. Let thy Cowe be foure yeeres old ere she take the Bull, and at tenne

yeeres sell her off, for then is her best caluing-time past. And thus much for thy Kine whose profit must goe to thy paile.

17. I. R. adds—because he is hyde-bound, which is a foule infirmitie.

57. 1. *kye*] fatte Kine. 2. *fore-croppe*] fore-crops.

4. *hucbone*] huckle-bone. *nache*] natch.

5. I. R. inserts *a* after *cowe*; this is an improvement.

58. 20. *husbandes*] antient Husbandmen. That is, I. R. repudiates the notion as erroneous.

32. I. R. adds—then giue him in a horne to drinke, olde Ale, Saffron, Treakle, and *Diascordion*, boyled together.

34. *by goddes leue*] as writeth Chyron, Phillyrides, and Melampus. A singular variation.

59. 11. *feitergrasse*] Fetter-grasse.

60. 1. *dewbolne*] dew-boulne. *Bolne* = bollen, swollen.

14. I. R. adds—and then with a little Tarre and fresh Butter to cure the wound.

61. 4. *ronne on water*] runne and water. The substitution is needless; to *run on water* means to run *with* water.

15. *and this, &c.*] to chafe him [*i.e.* to warm him]: and this cure is failelesse, so God be pleased.

62. Rubric. *The turne*] Of the turne, otherwise called the sturdy.

3. *for*] of (this use of *for* being obsolescent).

18. *for perysskyng*, *i.e.* to avoid piercing. *Perish* for *pierce* occurs in the various readings to P. Plowman, B. xvii. 189, and Wycliffe, Job xl. 19.

24. I. R. inserts—and anoynt it eyther with fresh butter or clarified Hoggs greace.

65. 3. *Starkely*] stakely (a misprint). *Starkely* is stiffly.

5. I. R. adds—yet if a poore man shall haue such a beast & cannot spare his worke: if he will euery morning or euening bathe his legs with Lynseede Oyle: it shall make him indure his worke, and keepe the beast from any great paine or swelling.

Here I. R. inserts two chapters, as follows.

#### Chapter 31.

¶ A soueraigne vnguent to cure the scabbe, itch, botches, or any surfeite whatsoeuer that commeth of heat or pouerty: or by mischance: taken from a most authentique Authour.

Take a good quantitie of the blacke dregges of Oyle, foure penny-worth of Quicksiluer wel killed,<sup>1</sup> as much Brimstone, Pitch, Wax, and Hoggs-grease as will make it thicke like an oyntment: boyle these together, and with it annoynt the beast that is vnsound, and this will vndoubtedly cure him, and that in very short season, if he be diligently tended.

#### Chapter 32.

¶ Another most excellent receite, to cure all manner of wounds, impostumes, vlcers, or Fistulaes.

Take the iuyce of the Onion called *Scilla*, take *Hellebor*, and *Bitumen Iudai-*

<sup>1</sup> *I.e.* mortified. “*Mortify*, to change the outward form of a mixt body, as when quicksilver . . . is dissolved in an acid menstruum”; Phillips.

*cum*, mingle these together, and incorporate them in manner of a plaister. The *Macedonians* and *Gelonians* to this receipt adde the opening of a vaine in the sole of the foote of a beast, and then to giue him to drinke milke and horses blood mingled together, which cureth all inward impostumes, surfeits or poysons, and to the outward grieve to apply the plaister, which was neuer knowne to be frustrate.

66. 27. I. R. has—and it is better to weane thy Calues at grasse then at hard meate, if they went to grasse before.

68. Here I. R. introduces a long flourish about the nobleness of horses, instancing the fabulous brood born to Neptune and Ceres (who transformed herself into a mare), the transformation of Saturn into a horse, and the like.

22. I. R. has—and that shall yee knowe by diuers signes, as by her riding of other Horses, by her flinging about the fieldes, or lastly by her priuie part, for that will twirle open, and shut againe, many times in an houre.

37. *lx.*] fortie (by misreading *lx.* as *xl.*).

63—79. I. R. varies this, and has—put to your white Mares a daple-gray Horse, so shall he gette all daples; to your bright bay mares a blacke bay horse, and so shall you gette all broune bayes; and to your blacke Mares, a blacke Horse, so he haue white feet, white ratch, and white feather; so shall he gette well-marked blacke Colts. But for the Carte it much matters not for colours, but for knowledge sake know that the broune bay, the daple-gray, the bright bay, and the white lyard, are the best colours; all other colours haue defects and are imperfect: of markes one white foote, a white starre, a white snyp, or a white rache is good: and an Ostrige feather in any place where the horse cannot see it, is the best of all the markes that can be for a horse. And thus much for horses or mares to be chosen or vsed.

70. 3. *and hygh grasse*] and much fogge.

8. *flashes*] and flagges. 9. *bunnes*] bands (wrongly).

32. *aftermath*] after-croppe. 33. *gyrre, &c.*] gyre, and to scoure so much that hee wil hardly endure to labour.

39. *horse*] horses. But *horse* is the true old plural form, the sb. being neuter; A.S. *hors*, pl. *hors*. Nevertheless, Fitzherbert himself has *horses* in the line following.

42. *put*] strike and hurte.

73. 1. *rase or a ball*] starre. A *ball* is a streak; hence the mod. E. *bald*, M.E. *ball-ed*. See *bald* in my Etym. Dict.

74. 2. *to be styffe-docked*] a stiffe docke or stearne of his taile.

77. 3. *syde-tailed*; *syde* means 'long.'

78. 2. *crested*] crested. And probably *crested* is a mere misprint.

5. *holowe-foted*] hollow-hooued.

79. 7. *chowynge*] chewing.

80. I. R. expands this chapter and the succeeding chapters so much that it would take up too much space to print all his additions. He gives recipes for the cure of the various diseases, and inserts chapters 'Of the head-ach or meagrum,' 'Of the staggers,' and 'Of the Vines.'<sup>1</sup> I can only undertake to give here a few notes to illustrate Fitzherbert's text.

83. I. R. has—The mourning of the tongue most commonly called the Canker.

<sup>1</sup> *Sic*; but we commonly find *vines* or *vives*. And in fact, Fitzherbert treats of it below, in section 91.

86, 87. I. R. considers these two diseases together, and discourses of them at length, saying that he has 'cured many very sore spent.'

88. I. R. explains 'Strangulion' as appearing 'in a swelling impostume as bigge as a mans fist, iust betweene a horses chaules.'

89—113. I. R. omits nearly all these sections, excepting 91 (which agrees with his 'Chapter 42. Of the Vines') and sect. 109 (which is his Chapter 54).

109. I. R. has the rubric—'Of enterfayring'; and says—'Enterfairing is a grieffe that commeth sometimes by ill shooring, and sometimes naturally, when a Horse trots so narrow that he hewes [knocks] one legge vpon another.' It is what we now call 'over-stepping.' The derivation is from the French form of Lat. *inter-ferire*; and it is from this term in farriery that we have taken the mod. E. *interfere*.

116. I. R. omits this section.

118. I. R. introduces here 'Chapter 55. How to make the poudre of honey and lime.'

119. 2, 6. The French lines are in doggerel rime, and the English translations seem also to be meant for verse, such as it is. The omission of the words *or iourneye* (in l. 8) would improve the scansion.

8. *or nyght*, i.e. ere night. Altered by I. R. to *out-right*.

120. 4. *tame*] lame (!); an ominous mistake, for which the compositor should have the credit.

121. 4. We may feel sure that this *sayinge* was originally in verse. Perhaps it ran thus:

"He that hath sheep, and swyne, and hyue,  
Slepe he, wake he, he maye thryue."

Or we might write *been* (Chaucer's plural of *bee*), riming with *theen*, the usual M. E. word for 'thrive.'

9. *Hogges*. As to the exact sense of this word, see the note on it in the 'Corrections and Additions' to the larger edition of my Etymological Dictionary.

122. 38. *sclatte*] slate.

124. Here I. R. begins his third book, relating to timber and distillations.

12. *Midsummer-moon* is an old phrase; it occurs in the second line of the prologue to the Plowman's Tale, which is inserted in some editions of Chaucer, though really written by the anonymous author of the Plowman's Crede.

33. *muldes a spade-graffe depe*] mould with a spade a foot deepe.

35. *peruse*] doo still.

39. I. R. adds—or els beeing drowned, not to prosper.

125. 4. *fyue fote brod, &c.*] fiue foote broad, then it would be set with three chesses or rowes one aboue another, but of what depth or breadth soeuer, it would be double sette, &c.

5. *hedge*] dead hedge.

126. 2. *ellore*] Elder (the later form).

6. *edderynge*] wood; see the glossary. So, in l. 7, I. R. translates *eddered* by *bounde*; and again in l. 16, he alters *edderinges* to *byndings*.

9. *trouse*] brouse (as above); see 38. 3.

127. 4. *the more halve*] more then halfe. But *the more halfe*, i.e. the greater part, is right enough, and the older phrase. In l. 23, it is left unaltered.

8. *in processe*] vnwares.
15. *sleue*] stand (clearly not the right word). In l. 32, I. R. has the spelling *sleane*. So also in sect. 133, l. 6.
128. 21. I. R. omits *and bolneth* ; in l. 29, he alters *bolne* to *rise*.
129. 10. *to leuse*] so looseneeth.
11. *gele*] got. But *gete* is the old form of the pp. ; A.S. *geten*.
130. 4. *casses*] Kasses. I. R. omits *or wydes*.
5. *slaunynges*] sleanings (*sic*). The form *popeler* reminds me that I have heard the large poplar-tree at 'Hyde-park Corner' in Cambridge called 'the *popular* tree.' See l. 23.
12. 16. *osyerde wethy*] Asiere Withy.
131. 7. *kydde*] kid or faggot. 9. 16. *brenne*] burne.
14. *to peruse them*] persist.
132. 4. I. R. omits 'and also the yues.'
5. *bowe*] hewe. But *bowe* refers to the bending of it before it is cut ; the bent piece is called the *byghte* in the next line. I. R. alters *byghte* to *bough*.
18. *brede*] breadth (which is the later form).
21. *xvi.*] one and twenty (by misreading *xvi.* as *xxi.*).
133. 1. *gyse*] vse of men.
6. *sleue*] sleaue ; and in l. 16. 10. *hym*] the seller.
11. *an*] one (which is the meaning intended).
14. *ouer*] vpper.
134. 7. *garches*] garthes. In ed. 1534, it is plainly *garches* ; but confusion between *c* and *t* is extremely common, as they were *written* nearly alike.
18. *a greatte*] by great. The two phrases have different senses ; *a greate* means 'in the lump,' without cutting or dressing the trees, as appears from the next line. But *by great* means 'by wholesale' ; which contradicts l. 1.
136. 6. *graffe*] graft (throughout ; which is the later form).
10. I. R. omits *the narower kyrfe*, and ; to avoid the word *kyrfe*.
137. 10. *pyrre-stocke*] Peare-tree stocke.
14. I. R. says—a Crab-tree stocke is good, but the Apple-tree stocke it-selfe is much better.
138. 1. *lanses*] branches. 10. *nothyng*] any thing.
26. *marley*] marle. 29. *cleauynge*] place clouen.
30. *for chynyng of the claye*] for feare the clay through drines should cleaue or riue.
33. *clayenge*] cleauing (which is clearly wrong).
36. I. R. adds—And three grafts are enough for any stock whatsoever, and sooner they will couer the head then foure, fiue, or sixe.
139. 6. *tenaunte*] tennant. 9. *ponch*] punch.
10. *stop*] scope. *one syde*] other side.
19. *clyppe*] slip. 20. After *growe*, I. R. adds—and to fence it close about with some thick-set hedge.
- After this section I. R. inserts 'Chapter 17. Howe to graft by leafe, causing all manner of fruit to grow vpon one tree.' His method is to insert what we should now call a slip, with a stalk and leaf growing from it.
140. 2. *scyences*] syens. In fact, *scyences* (= scions-es) is a double plural, and was probably a provincial term, like *nesteses* or *nesses* for *nests*. So also *fairies-es*

is a country name for *fairies*, which some lexicographers, not understanding, actually write and print as *Pharisees*!

6. *he wyll*] you will. This alteration is made wherever the phrase occurs.

8. *lyke*] like or prosper in any wise.

\*\*\* Here I. R. inserts a large portion of his own (or perhaps copied from other sources) without any hint that it is not in his original. The insertion extends from p. 103 to p. 143, and contains the following chapters.

Chapter 19. Of gardening or planting.

Chapter 20. Of distillation, what it is.

Chapter 21. Of Beanes and the distillation thereof.

Chapter 22. Of Cherries and their distillation.

Chapter 23. Of Walnuts and their distillation.

Chapter 24. Of small Nuts and their distillation.

Chapter 25. Of Honny and the distillation thereof.

Chapter 26. Of Apples and their distillation.

Chapter 27. Of Peaches and their distillation.

Chapter 28. Of Mallowes and their distillation.

Chapter 29. Of Grapes and their distillation.

Chapter 30. Of Quinces and their distillation.

Chapter 31. The distillation of Cardus [*sic*] benedictus, or the blessed thistle.

Chapter 32. The distillation of Angellica.

Chapter 33. The distillation of Cammomile.

Chapter 34. The distillation of Germander.

Chapters 35—40. The distillation of Eyebright, Hopps, wood Lilly, Balme, Strawberries, and Cinamon.

Chapter 41. Of Nutmegs and their vse.

Chapters 42—44. Of Mace, Pepper, and Cloues.

Chapter 45. An excellent Balme to take away any blemish vppon the skinne.

Chapter 46. A receite to cure any wound or hurt.

Chapter 47. An approved receite for the gowte.

With this Chapter he closes 'the third booke of Husbandry.'

The fourth book has an introductory chapter, not in Fitzherbert, subdivided into sections with the following headings. The office of a Steward of a household. For prouiding of victuals. The Steward and Garniter.<sup>1</sup> The Steward and Miller. The Steward and Baker. The Pantry. The Butler. The Seller.<sup>2</sup> The Ewrie.<sup>3</sup> Of the Cooke. Of the Scullery. Of the Vsher of the Hall. Of the Yeoman of the Wardrop [Wardrobe]. The Slaughter-man. The Cater [caterer]. The Clarke of the Kitchin.

After this, I. R. condescends to return to his original.

141. 36. *sherde*] breach (which is a gloss).

49. *tyne*] shut (a gloss). *traile*] tale (probably a misprint).

59. *put it*] blot them. 72. *loked vppon*] attended vnto.

<sup>1</sup> I.e. the servant who had charge of the *garners* or granaries, and whose business it was to send corn to the mill, the stable, and the poultry-yard.

<sup>2</sup> Cellar.

<sup>3</sup> Ewery; where were kept 'Napery, Basons, Ewers, sweete waters, Perfumes, Torches, Supper-lights, Prickets, sises of Waxe, and such like;' also 'tallow Candles, Candle-sticks, Snuffers, and such other.'

142. This is a most singular section, since it presupposes that a gentleman's servant would be able to recognise the rhythm of an English hexameter. As an early experiment in hexameters, it is very curious. In the original, it is printed as *prose*, but each line ends with a full stop, and the next begins with a capital letter. I have therefore printed it as verse. It is, however, of a rather rude character; *horne boget* hardly comes up to our idea of a dactyl, nor *and shoes* to that of a spondee. For the reader's assistance, I may remark that the *dactyls* are as follows: *Purse dagger, -chef shoyng-, horne boget, -ter sadel-, hatte with thy, Bowe arrowes, stringe and thy, Penne paper, -waxe pommies, bokes thou re-, -ble nedle, leste that thy, -gel gyue thy, se he be, Make mery, synge and thou, hede to thy, gere that thou.* The rest are spondees.

I. R., not perceiving the law of rhythm, makes wild work of it. He calls it "An excellent rude Lesson in rude ryme." He divides the lines rightly, and leaves the first three verses untouched. But the rest assume the following fearful forms.

Penne, paper, incke, parchment, redde waxe, punisse (*sic*),  
and bookes doe thou remember,  
Penknife, combe, thymble, needle, thred, and poynt,  
least that by chaunce thy garth breake.  
Bodkin, knyfe, rubber, giue thy horse meate,  
See he be shodde well, make merry, sing if thou can,  
And take heede to thy needments, that thou loose none.

I think we may fairly put these down as being the worst verses extant in the English language; though this is saying a good deal.

143. 7. The saying doubtless represents a rude couplet in verse. The dative case *wyfe* (governed by *of*) was formerly spelt *wyue*, and rimed with *thryue*.

144. *Salomon*, Solomon. But where to find, in his writings, this remarkable sentence, I do not know.

\*.\* After this section I. R. inserts a quantity of additional matter, which he tells us (at p. 174) is drawn from his 'owne experience in byrds and foules.' The additional chapters treat of choice of cocks, hens for brood, number of eggs to each hen, chickens, diseases of poultry (especially of the pip), choice of poultry, how to fat poultry, how to make capons, where to keep poultry, how to choose, keep, and fatten geese, how to keep ducks, peacocks, 'ginny or turkie-cocks,' pigeons, pheasants, turtles, partridges, and swans; after which digression he returns to his text. I may remark that he considers it essential that a hen should sit upon *an odd number* of eggs, say 19, and that matters should be so arranged as to provide for the hatching of chickens 'in the increase of the Moone.' The leaves of a bay-tree, 'or els some Bents or Grasse,' will preserve eggs 'from the hurt of thunder.' Chickens ought not 'to be breathed vpon by any Snake, Toade, or other venomous thing'; if they are, you must quickly burn amongst them some '*Galbanum*, or womans hayre.' Those that have the pip should be dieted on Hearbgrace [rue] or garlic. Geese 'are more watchfull then Doggs.' 'You must vse in the time of brooding, to lay vnder your egges [of geese] the rootes of Nettles, to the end the Gosling may escape stinging of Nettles, which otherwise many times killeth them.' If geese are to have fat livers, feed them on dry figs mingled with water. Ducks chiefly delight in acorns. If you praise a peacock, 'he will presently sette vp his taile.' A turkey-cock 'is very highly esteemed of, both for his rarenesse and greatnes of body;' and we are told that he changes the colour of the wrinkled skin about his

head at pleasure, either to white, red, blue, yellow, 'or what other colour els hee list; which thing maketh him seeme wonderfull st[r]ange to them that behold it.' . . . 'Their greatest diseases is the Pip and the Squecke.' As to pigeons, 'I haue knowne some that haue builded their Doue-houses vpon high pillars ouer the midst of some Pond or great water, both because they delight much in water, and also to keepe them the safer from vermine.' Swans 'will, when they waxe olde, declare the time of their own death to be neere approaching, by a sweete and lamentable note which they then sing.'

145. 15. I. R. has—'Wherefore it is conuenient (I say) that they loue each other as effectually as loue can in the best sence comprehend: and this worke especiallie, a woman is bound both by law and nature to performe.' Why so?

146. I. R. omits ll. 2—7; he was certainly a Protestant.

8. *redy*. This is the old word for *dressed*, as might be shewn by many examples. It may suffice to say that I. R. explains *araye theym* in l. 11 by *make them redy*.

10. *socle*] suckle. I. R. omits *sye vp thy mylke*, which he probably did not understand.

13. I. R. omits *and take thy parte with theym*; and, for *serue thy swyne* (l. 20) he puts *looke to the seruing of thy Swine*. Customs were probably changing.

31. *the gleyd*] Kites. And *fullymarte* is omitted.

35. After *eate*, I. R. adds—in Sallets, or otherwise.

42. *heckeled*] heckled. 43. *wrapped*] warped.

51. *ripeled*, i.e. rippled; I. R. has *repled*. In l. 41 above, I. R. has *repealed*; yet this is, I suppose, the same word.

53. *loken*] Locken. It means locked or tightly closed up; for *lock* was once a strong verb.

57. *pulled*] culled (which is an ingenious alteration and perhaps right).

104. The Knight of the Tour-Landry is the book here referred to, and was one of the books printed by Caxton. The edition printed by the Early English Text Society, and edited by T. Wright, is so easily accessible that it is needless to say more here than that Fitzherbert's description of it is perfectly correct.

147. 12. *rendit*] tendit. This correction may be right, but I am not sure of it. The Leonine (or riming) verses quoted cannot be of any great antiquity, and it is quite possible that *rendit* is intended as a Low-Latin translation of the French *rend*, pr. s. of *rendre*. The true Latin word is, of course *reddit*; which, however, gives no rime. Fitzherbert's translation is intended to be in verse.

148. 3. *brynke*] brim. "Better spare at brim than at bottom"; Hazlitt's Proverbs. And see note to Tusser, 10. 35.

12. *tedure*] teathure (not a good spelling.)

15. *lees*] ground. *flytte*] shift. 17. *tyed*] stakt.

26. *putteth hym in the pynfolde*] impounds him.

38. *ren ryot*] runne.

43. *it is meruayle*] gracious were the stars of thy natiuitie (a fine phrase!).

150, 151, 152, 153. I. R. omits these four sections.

153. 3. This quotation, from Dionysii Catonis Disticha, iii. 7, appears also in P. Plowman, B. xii. 23.

28. I do not know where to find this quotation.

155. 10. *behouable*] behououfull (which is a better form).

156. In the rubric, I. R. has—'what riches are'; but in l. 1, he has—'It is now requisite to know what riches is.' Already *riches* was becoming a plural substantive. It may be remarked that I. R. omits the *Latin* forms of all the quotations.

157. 19. *duetic*] debt (which is what is meant). So also in ll. 22, 24.

160. 2. After *declare*, I. R. inserts—and euery booke of Common prayer dooth containe them. A pertinent remark.

161. 3. I. R. omits the reference to the Athanasian Creed, and says we must 'beleeeue stedfastly the Catholick fayth.'

25. I. R. omits from *The fulfyllynge* to the end of the section. For a description of the seven works of mercy, see Spenser, F. Q. i. 10. 36.

163. 3. I. R. has—and hast a stedfast fayth in Christ. He has almost wholly rewritten this section, and says we are bound 'to come to common prayer;' and omits the quotation from St. Ambrose.

164. 7. It is remarkable that the author should refer us to the 3rd chapter of Proverbs instead of the 15th. Our forefathers seem to have had no idea either of giving a correct reference or of verifying one.

10. *Qui a* is printed, in Fitzherbert, as *Quia*, in one word. The correction being obvious, I have made it.

18. *Isodorus*] Osorius. Why this alteration is made, I cannot tell. In l. 29 of the next section, I. R. has *Isidore*, and in l. 37, *Isidorus*.

165. 39. *Hampole*] Hanapole (wrongly). Richard Rolle, of Hampole, was the author of the Pricke of Conscience, edited by Dr. Morris for the Philological Society, and of numerous other works, including some Religious Treatises edited by Mr. Perry for the Early English Text Society.

47. I. R. omits this line; he probably did not like the word *oratory*.

52. The first book of Samuel was formerly called the first book of Kings.

166. I. R. rewrites this section, and avoids any reference to *Latin* or to the *Ave Maria*.

167. 19, 20. I. R. gives the Latin lines, and his own translation, as follows.

The ghostly enemy doth not stay  
Till tempted persons doe obey:  
For yeelding, hee a Lyon is,  
Gainestood, a flie: his pray doth misse.

His syntax is as bad as his translation.

34. *steke*] shutte. 35. *styfly*] manfully. We have here an idea which is frequently met with in our literature. It may suffice to refer to Grosseteste's Chastel d'Amour, the sermon called Soules Warde printed in Dr. Morris's Specimens of English, part i., the extract from the Ayenbite of Inwyt printed in Morris and Skeat's Specimens, part ii., the Tower of Truth and Castle of Caro described in Piers the Plowman, &c. We are also reminded of Bunyan's Holy War.

168. 31. Here again Fitzherbert gives us the wrong reference to the Proverbs, viz. to Chap. xiv. instead of Chap. xix. His reading *Veneratur dominus*] is extraordinary.

169. 11. *vnable to be foughten agaynst*] inuinsible.

13, 14. *sleeketh*] slacketh. *slake*] quench.

35. I. R. copies Fitzherbert's reference to Chap. 35; but read 34.

172. 14. *conuerted*] conuartaed (a peculiar pronunciation).

21. This quotation from St. Augustine appears also in *Piers Plowman*, B. v. 291.

50. This last paragraph is called by I. R. 'Fitzherberts protestation;' yet he actually alters his author's words, substituting 'the holy scriptures' for 'al holy churche,' with various other smaller 'corrections.'

To crown his effrontery, he gives the address of 'The Authour to his Booke' in the following extraordinary (amended) form !

Goe grosse fram'd image of a holy saint,  
present my loue, though rude my pensill paint ;  
If any blame thee for deformitie,  
say Nature calld thee, and not Oratorie ;  
If on thy browes be starres of ignorance,  
say Fortunes pype did neuer teach thee dance.  
Wish them amend which best can iudge thine ill,  
so shall both thou and I bee happy still.

---

## GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

The references are to the *sections* and *lines*, as numbered. Besides the usual contractions, note that *v.* = verb in the infinitive mood, *pr. s.* = present tense, *third* person singular, unless *1 p.* or *2 p.* is added. Proper names are included in this index.

- Able, *adj.* fit, suitable, 121/16.  
 Abrode, *adv.* abroad, 10/30.  
 Abused, *pp.* ill-suited, 151/13.  
 Accompte, *s.* account, inventory, 151/1;  
 A-compte, account, 146/92.  
 A-cloyde, *s.* accloyed; a hurt caused by running a nail into a horse's foot, 115/1. From O. F. *cloyer*, same as *clouer*, to nail.  
 Acre, *s.* acre, 12/4.  
 A-crosse, *adv.* on the cross, crosswise, 61/8.  
 Affreyd, *s.* a disease in horses caused by hard riding, 104/1. Cf. E. *fray*; and see *frayer* in Cotgrave.  
 After, *prep.* according to, 15/22, 121/12; close to, 25/22.  
 Aftermath, *s.* a second crop of grass, 70/32.  
 All-onely, *adv.* only, 37/23, 65/4. Cf. Lowl. Sc. *al-anerly*, only.  
 Almes, *s.* alms, 168/3.  
 Almes-dedes, *s.* alms-deeds, 168/1.  
 Al-onely, *adv.* alone, 141/9. See All-onely.  
 Ambrose, St., 156/23, 163/9, 167/11.  
 Amended, *pp.* mended, 141/32.  
 Amerced, *pp.* fined, 148/22.  
 An, *num. adj.* one, 133/11.  
 Anastasius, 164/14.  
 And, *conj.* if, 6/12, 24/21, 25/16, 68/62, 70/34, 142/7.  
 Anis, *s. pl.* awns, 34/25, 29.  
 Anna, Hannah, 165/53.  
 Apparell, *s.* apparel, 151/3.  
 Appeyre, *v.* injure, 18/31; appeyareth, *pr. s.* impairs, injures, 18/17.  
 Aray, *s.* array, 151/13.  
 Araye, *imp. s.* dress, 146/11.  
 A-slope, *adv.* slanting, 2/24.  
 Assaut, *s.* assault, 167/37.  
 At-after, *prep.* after, 22/10. (Not uncommon.) It occurs in Chaucer, C.T. 11531.  
 Athanasii, *gen. s.* of Athanasius, 161/4.  
 Attempte, *v.* to tempt, 167/4.  
 Atteynt, *s.* attain, a disease caused by overstepping, 113/1. "Of an upper *attaint*, or nether *attaint*, or any hurt by over-reaching." — G. Markham, Husbandry, b. i. c. 54.  
 Auctorytie, *s.* authority, 141/19; auctorytes, *pl.* powers, *prol.* 21.  
 Aue, Ave Maria, 166/12.  
 Augur, *s.* auger, tool for boring holes, 41/8; *gen.* augurs, i.e. made by an auger, 3/57.  
 Auoyde, *v.* depart, 167/36.  
 Austyn, St. Augustine, 156/19, 157/3, 158/1, 164/26, 168/25.  
 Auyse, *pr. s.* advise, 141/1.  
 Awry, *adv.* awry, 50/5.  
 Axil-pynnes, *s. pl.* axle-pins, 5/20.  
 Axiltre, *s.* axle-tree, 5/18.  
 Backe-syde, *s.* back side, back, 127/9.  
 Badger, *s.* badger, 71/7.  
 Bagges, *s. pl.* bags, 141/69.  
 Bakbandes, *s. pl.* back-bands for a horse in a cart, 5/28.  
 Baken, *s.* bacon, 121/18.  
 Balkes, *s. pl.* divisions of land (covered with grass) in an open field, 6/17.  
 Ball, *s.* a white streak, 73/1. See *Bald* in my Etym. Dict.  
 Band, *s.* band for barley, 28/8. See below.  
 Bandes, *s. pl.* bands, the bands that tie bundles of faggots together, 131/8.  
 Bargeins, *s. pl.* transactions, 36/20.

- Barbes, *s. pl.* the barbles, small excrescences of flesh in a horse's mouth, 82/1. See Lampas.
- Baste, *s.* piece of bast, 138/30; bastes, *pl.* 136/22.
- Bate, *v.* to lower, abate, 153/16.
- Bauson, *s.* badger, 71/7.
- Bayly, or Baylye, *s.* bailiff, 134/3, 141/57, 148/40.
- Bayting. See note to sect. 8 (ch. 8, ll. 9 and 13); p. 131.
- Beate, *v.* improve [not beat], 8/20.
- Lowl. Sc. *beet*, A. S. *bétan*, to better. "Beet-axe, the instrument used in beeting ground in denshering."—Wright.
- Beetle-browed, having projecting brows, note to 56/9; p. 139.
- Begonne, prob. an error for *be gone*, i.e. are dropped, 18/10. See the note.
- Begotten, *pp.* obtained, 169/30, 42.
- Behouable, *adj.* fitting, 155/10.
- Belte, *v.* to shear the buttocks and tails of sheep, 40/24. *Burl* is used in the same sense; see *belt* and *burl* in Old Country Words, ed. Britten, pp. 134, 136.
- Belybandes, *s. pl.* belly-bands for a horse in a cart, 5/28.
- Bende, *adj.* bent, 3/49; as *s.* bent piece, 4/33.
- Bendfoder, *s.* fodder of straw and hay mingled, note to 6/27; p. 131.
- Be-pysse hym-selfe, give out moisture, 26/27.
- Bere-barleye, *s.* a kind of barley, 13/26. A reduplicated word. *Bere* is the same as *bar-* in *bar-ley*. A. S. *bere*, barley.
- Bernard, St., 156/25, 164/10.
- Best lykinge, *adj. superl.* goodliest, best in appearance, 48/13.
- Besyde, *prep.* on the one side, sideways out of, 139/17.
- Better, *adj. compar.* 5/12.
- Beyked, *pp.* warmed, dried, 24/23. M. E. *beken*, answering to an A. S. form *bécan*\* (not found), formed as a secondary verb, by vowel-change, from A. S. *béc*, pt. t. of *bacan*, to bake. So also *lay* from *lie*, *set* from *sit*, etc. See *beken* in Stratmann, who refers to Le Bone Florence, l. 99, Iwain and Gawain, l. 1459, O. E. Homilies, i. 269, and Test. of Cresseyde, 26.
- Beykyng, *s.* warming, drying, 24/12. See above.
- Beytynge, *pres. pt.* feeding, lit. baiting, 22/12.
- Bier, *s.* buyer, 134/30.
- Bigge, *adj.* big, large (with reference to clods), 10/4.
- Blacke-thorne, *s.* blackthorn, 124/14.
- Blankettes, *s. pl.* blankets, 146/79.
- Blend-corn, *s.* wheat mixed with rye, 34/19. (*Blend* = blended.)
- Blesse, *v.* to bless, 146/2.
- Blome, *pr. pl.* bloom, 24/16.
- Bloude, *s.* blood, 145/8; also the name of a sickness among sheep, 48/2.
- Bloud-yren, *s.* bleeding-iron, lancet, 58/29.
- Byssomme, *v.* to copulate, said of sheep, 37/14. A ewe is said to be *blissom*, i.e. blithe-some, eager. Cf. *lissom* = lithe-some.
- Bobbed, *pt. pl.* struck, 166/29.
- Bodkyn, *s.* bodkin, 142/6.
- Boget, *s.* a budget, wallet, 142/1.
- Boke, book, 3/2, etc.; bokes, *pl.* 142/4.
- Bolles, *s. pl.* pods, 146/50. Lit. "swellings;" see below. Cf. Du. *bol*, swollen.
- Bolne, *v.* to swell, 128/29; *bolneth*, *pr. s.* swells, 128/21. Cf. Swed. *bulna*, Dan. *bulne*, to swell.
- Bolster, *s.* place of support, 4/51. The bed of a timber carriage is called a *bolster* (Wright).
- Bord-clothes, *s. pl.* table-cloths, 146/45.
- Borde, *s.* board, 122/27.
- Bores, *s. pl.* boars, 121/9.
- Bottelles, *s. pl.* bottles, 141/69.
- Bottes, *s. pl.* bots, a kind of worms troublesome to horses, 102/1.
- Bowes, *s. pl.* boughs, 122/21.
- Bowes, *s. pl.* the bent pieces of wood (beneath the yoke) which pass round the necks of yoked oxen, 5/3. Usually called *oxbow*, as in Tusser.
- Bracer, *s.* bracer, armour for the arms, 142/3. See Chaucer, C. T. III.
- Braked, *pp.* bruised in a brake or machine for crushing flax, 146/42.
- Breade-corne, *s.* corn to be ground to bread meal, for making brown bread, 20/16. See note to P. Plowman, C. ix. 61.
- Breake thy faste, *phr.* breakfast, 149/8.
- Breaketh, *pr. s.* breaks in, 120/3.
- Brede, *s.* breadth, 110/3, 132/18. A. S. *brædu*.
- Brekefaste, *s.* breakfast, 146/12.
- Bren, *v.* burn, 27/10; brenne, 131/2.

- Brode, *adj.* broad, 2/14.  
 Brodye, *adj.* ready to lay (as hens), lit. brood-y, 146/24.  
 Broken-wynded, *s.* a being broken in the wind (said of a horse), 85/1.  
 Brome, *s.* the plant broom, 44/4.  
 Brouse, *s.* small sprigs which the cattle eat, 132/3; and see *notes* to 38/3, 126/9. O. F. *broust*, a sprig.  
 Brouse, *v.* to browse, eat off, 131/3. Derived from the sb. above.  
 Broyse, *imp. s.* bruise, 59/12; broysed, *pp.* 6/30.  
 Brue, *v.* to brew, 146/15.  
 Brumentes, *s. pl.* inventories, 152/5. Roquefort gives: '*Brevement* [obviously an error for *Brevement*], état de dépense, mémoire, agenda, bordereau.' He also notes *breumen*, used for *brevement*, briefly. Hence *brument* is for *brevement*, i.e. short list, abstract.  
 Bruised, *pp.* bruised, 129/4.  
 Bryckle, *adj.* brittle, 100/8.  
 Bryne, *s.* brine, 44/8.  
 Brynke, *s.* brink, brim, top, 148/3.  
 Bryse, *imp. s.* bruise, 129/3. See Broyse.  
 Buddes, *s. pl.* buds, shoots, 126/11.  
 Bukler, *s.* buckler, 142/3.  
 Bulder-stones, *s. pl.* smooth large round stones, 15/28.  
 Bull, *s.* harrow-bull, 15/9. See Harowe-bulles.  
 Bulleys, *s. pl.* bullaces, 136/4, 140/1.  
 Bunnes, *s. pl.* dry stalks, 70/9. "*Bun*, a dry stalk;" Wright. Cf. Gael. *bun*, a root, stock, stump; *banan*, stubble.  
 Burges, *pr. s.* buds, burgeons, 135/8.  
 Burthen, *s.* crop, 12/21.  
 Busshelles, *s. pl.* bushels, 12/8.  
 Busshell-pokes, *s. pl.* bags or sacks holding a bushel, 141/69.  
 Bustardes, *s. pl.* bustards, 146/29.  
 But, *prep.* except, 122/1; but and, *conj. if*, 44/2.  
 By, *v.* buy, 56/5; bye, 148/36.  
 By and by, *phr.* exactly, distinctly, in order one after the other, 126/15; immediately, 42/8. See Wright's Gloss.  
 Byd, *v.* to bid, invite, 152/18.  
 Byer, *s.* buyer, 118/6.  
 Bygge, *s.* bigg, the name of a kind of barley, 13/27. *Bigg* occurs as the name of a kind of barley A.D. 1474-5; see Rogers, Hist. Agric. vol. iii. Icel. *bygg*, Dan. *byg*, barley.  
 Byghte, *s.* (bight), bend, 132/6.  
 Byrdes, *s. pl.* birds, chickens, 146/30.  
 Caluary, Calvary, 166/32.  
 Cambrydge-shyre, 2/27.  
 Camborell, *s.* the hock of an animal, 107/3. Usually *cambrel* or *gambrel*.  
 Can, *pr. s.* knows, 52/7; *pr. pl.* 147/26.  
 Candell-lyghte, *s.* candle-light, 149/5.  
 Candelmas, *s.* the day of the purification of the Virgin, Feb. 2, 134/22.  
 Canker, cancer, a disease of horses, *note* to 83/1; p. 141.  
 Cannes, *s. pl.* cans, 141/68.  
 Capitayne, *s.* captain, 167/28.  
 Carte-ladder, *s.* a frame-work behind a cart, 5/27. See *carte-ladders*, 5/30.  
 Cart-sadel, *s.* the small saddle placed on a horse in the shafts, 5/27.  
 Caryage, *s.* traffic of carts, 128/12.  
 Caryen, *s.* carrion, 6/34, 58/10.  
 Casses, *s. pl.* the name of a kind of apple, 130/4. Roquefort gives *casse*, as meaning an oak. Cf. Low Lat. *casnus*, F. *chêne*, an oak.  
 Caste, *v.* to swarm, as bees, 122/6; caste, *pp.* thrown over, as ploughed earth, 33/4.  
 Castyng, *s.* casting, 13/16. See 13/13.  
 Cattell, *s.* cattle, 57/2.  
 Cayphas, Caiphas, 166/27.  
 Chafed, *pp.* heated, over-ridden, 85/5.  
 Chafyng, *pres. pt.* growing warm, 88/2.  
 Chall-bones, *s. pl.* jawbones, 86/3.  
 Challes, *s. pl.* jaws, 75/3. *Chall* = *jowl*; see *jowl* in my Etym. Dict.  
 Champyon, *s.* flat, open, said of country, 66/15. (The same as *champaign*.) See Tusser's Husbandry.  
 Chapmannes, *s. gen.* merchants, purchasers, 118/4.  
 Chapyter, *s.* chapter, 141/13; *pl.* chapyters, 141/3.  
 Charte, *s.* cart, 19/5.  
 Cheape, *adj.* cheap; *better cheape*, cheaper (where *cheap* was orig. a sb.), 5/13.  
 Chekyns, *s. pl.* chickens, 146/89.  
 Chepeth, *pr. s.* bargains for, 157/27.  
 Cheryes, *s. pl.* cherries, 136/3, 140/1.  
 Chesse, *s.* chess, *prol.* 15.  
 Chesses, *s. pl.* rows, *note* to 125/4. A *chase* is "a row"; see Old Country Words, ed. Britten, p. 59.  
 Chowe, *v.* chew, 23/11; chowyng, *pr. pt.* 79/7.  
 Chrisostome, St. Chrysostom, 155/16; Crystostome, 156/30.

- Churle hempe, *s.* male hemp (so called), 146/58.
- Chylturne, *s.* the name of a kind of soil, 2/5. See note. We find *Cilturn* as a place-name in the A. S. Chron. an. 1009. And see Old Country Words, ed. Britten, p. 11.
- Chyne, *s.* the chine, back, 87/1, 119/4.
- Chynynge, *s.* cracking, 138/30. A. S. *clnan*, to crack. Cf. E. *chine*, *chink*.
- Clarks, *s. pl.* clerks, scholars, 7/15.
- Clayenge, *s.* putting on the clay, 138/33.
- Cleaunyng, *s.* cleft, 138/29.
- Cleese, *s. pl.* claws, 64/2; clesse, 47/3, 9. (Properly *clees*.)
- Clerkes, *s. pl.* scholars, 166/39.
- Cley, *s.* clay, 2/4.
- Close, *s.* an inclosure, 66/17; closes, *pl.* 123/2.
- Clothes, *s. pl.* cloths, 146/79.
- Clothe-makers, *s. pl.* cloth-makers, 146/81.
- Clot, *s.* clod, 15/47; clottes, *pl.* 15/14.
- Clotty, *adj.* lumpy, full of clods, 15/45.
- Clouen, *pp.* cloven, divided, 136/20.
- Clouen-footed, *adj.* cloven-footed, 146/27.
- Clout, *pp.* clouted, strengthened with nails or pieces of iron, 5/18.
- Cloute, *s.* rag, 64/9.
- Cockole, *s.* corn-cockle, 20/13.
- Cocledrake, *an error for* coele, drake, *two distinct words*; coele = corn-cockle, 20/3. See Drake; and see above.
- Codde, *s.* cod, 57/5; a pod, 29/11 (where *coddes*, *pl.* would be better); *coddes*, *pl.* pods, 20/11.
- Codde, *v.* bear fruit (said of peas), 12/38. Cf. *peascod* = pea-pod; see above.
- Coffyns, *s. pl.* baskets, 166/21.
- Cogges, *s. pl.* cogs, 134/9. "But the *cogge-whele* in a corne-mylne is a great helper, if it be well pycked [clean cut], well *cogged*, and well roned; sixe ronges and xlviii. *cogges* are best for a great ryuer;" On Surveying, c. 39. Thus the *rungs* are the divisions of the smaller, and the *cogs* of the larger wheel, at the circumference.
- Coke, *s.* another name for the plough-ear, 3/5. Perhaps connected with *Cokers*, iron rims round clogs, and *calkins*, *cawkins*, the parts of a horse-shoe turned up and sharpened to prevent slipping (Wright; Gloss.)
- Coke, *s.* a piece of iron used instead of a plough-foot, 4/46. See above.
- Cole, *s.* coal, 19/3.
- Coltes-euyll, *s.* a disease in colts, 101/1. See G. Markham; Husbandry, b. i. c. 32.
- Combe, *s.* comb, 142/5.
- Commons, *s. pl.* common pasture-grounds, 6/10.
- Common weale, *s.* general advantage, 151/22.
- Compassse, *adj.* circular, encompassing, 136/11.
- Conclusion, in, finally, at last, 132/18.
- Connyng, *s.* knowledge, 141/22.
- Content, *adj.* pleased, 120/17.
- Conuenyente, *adj.* fitting, *prol.* 14, 145/15, 146/75.
- Conuocation, *s.* gathering, 155/3.
- Copyoke, *s.* part of the harness for a waggon, 5/5. Wright gives *cop*, (1) top . . . (7) the part of a waggon which hangs over the thiller-horse, (8) the beam placed between a pair of drawing oxen. See Yoke.
- Cordes, *s. pl.* cords, a disease in front of a horse's fore-legs, 92/1. "Cords, or string-halt, is an unnaturall binding of the sinews;" G. Markham, Husbandry, b. i. c. 64.
- Corne, *s.* kind of corn, 32/2; cornes, *pl.* grains, 15/4.
- Corser, *s.* a horse-dealer, 119/15, 120/4. We also find *scorser* in the same sense.
- Cotes, *s. pl.* coats, 151/13.
- Couer, *v.* cover, a term applied to collecting sheaves by tens, two of them covering the other eight by being laid across, 31/2.
- Couerlettes, *s. pl.* coverlets, 146/80.
- Countre, *s.* county, 3/7; countreys, *s. pl.* counties, 2/2; 35/6; countreyes, 2/28, 3/8.
- Courbe, *s.* a curb, a kind of lameness in horses, 107/1.
- Cowpers, *s. pl.* coopers, 134/7.
- Crabtree, *s.* crabtree, 124/5; crabbe-tree, 137/11.
- Cranes, *s. pl.* cranes, 146/29.
- Cratches, *s. pl.* racks, mangers, 70/44. F. *crèche*.
- Cratches, *s. pl.* scratches, a disease in a horse's pasterns, 112/1.
- Credence, *s.* credit, belief, 141/18.
- Crofote, *s.* crowfoot, 15/22. A *crowfoot* is a *Ranunculus*; see Dict. of E. Plant-names.

Croke, *pr. pl.* crook, bend, 27/12.  
 Croked, *adj.* crooked, 3/39.  
 Cromely, *adj.* liable to crumble, 100/6.  
 Croper, *s.* the crupper, 105/2.  
 Croppe, *v.* to crop, to cut off the top-most shoots or the sprigs, 131/1.  
 Croppes, *s. pl.* shoots, sprigs, 44/4.  
 Crosse, *adj.* going across, 5/22.  
 Crume, *s.* crumb, 11/23.  
 Cudde, *s.* cud, 17/33.  
 Culture, *s.* coulter, 3/6, 34, 48; 63/4.  
 Cure, *s.* endeavour, 146/2.  
 Currante, *adj.* running, moving, 128/4; sloping downwards, 128/8.  
 Customers, *s. pl.* customers, 119/13.  
  
 Damme, *s.* dam, mother (said of a mare), 68/75.  
 Dampsons, *s. pl.* damsons, 136/4, 140/1.  
 Darbyshyre, 17/21.  
 Darnolde, *s.* darnel, 20/4; dernelde, 20/21.  
 Danyd, David, 156/34, 168/17.  
 Deceypt, *s.* deceit, 146/102.  
 Declared, *pp.* explained, 147/28.  
 Dee-nettylles, *s. pl.* purple dead-nettles, 20/47.  
 Defautes, *s. pl.* defects, faults, 141/54.  
 Depart, *v.* to part, separate, 145/15.  
 Dernelde, *s.* darnel, 20/21.  
 Detters, *s. pl.* debtors, 170/11.  
 Dettes, *s. pl.* debts, 170/10.  
 Deuyded, *pp.* divided, *prol.* 18, 11/15.  
 Dewbolne, *s.* a disease; lit. "swollen with dew," 60/1. *Bollen*=swollen. "Dewboln, a swelling, beginning at the neather part of the dewlap;" G. Markham, Husbandry, c. 37 (bk. ii.).  
 Dewlapp, *s.* dewlap, 59/10.  
 Discretion, *s.* discernment, wisdom, 11/1; discretion, 146/122.  
 Displeasure, *s.* displeasure, offence, 153/22.  
 Disport, *s.* sport, 153/11.  
 Dockes, *s. pl.* docks, 20/3, 12.  
 Dodder, *s.* a kind of weed, 20/47. See Dict. of E. Plant-names, p. 154; and *doder* in Turner's Names of Herbes.  
 Dogfenell, *s.* stinking chamomile, *Anthemis Cotula*, 20/4, 32. See Dict. of E. Plant-names.  
 Domynation, *s.* dominion, power, 54/22, 152/30.  
 Dongynge, *s.* manuring, 13/4.  
 Douted, *pp.* manured, 13/2.

Dout, *imp. s.* doubt, 151/27.  
 Douues, *s. pl.* doves, 17/34.  
 Dowles, *s. pl.* tholes, pegs, 5/9. "Doul, a nail or pin sharpened at each end;" Wright. "Tholle, a cart-pynne;" Palsgrave.  
 Dradde, *pp.* dreaded, 167/8.  
 Drake, *s.* a kind of darnel, 20/17. Also called *drawk* (Wright); and see E. Plant-names, p. 159.  
 Draughte, *s.* a team of horse or oxen, 22/10; a manner of drawing, 15/22.  
 Dresse, *v.* to prepare, by cutting off all small twigs, 132/5.  
 Drone, *s.* a drone, 122/49.  
 Duetie, *s.* debt, 157/19.  
 Dunne, *adj.* dun, brown, 34/40.  
 Dychynge, *s.* ditching, 124/2.  
 Dyssheryte, *v.* to disinherit, 153/24.  
 Dyssheborde, *s.* dish-board, dresser, 146/9.  
 Dystaffe, *s.* distaff, 146/46.  
  
 Ebbe, *adj.* shallow, 33/4.  
 Ecclesiastici, *gen. s.* of Ecclesiasticus, 169/35.  
 Eddered, *pp.* bound at the top of the stakes, 126/7. See *yeather* in Ray, Gloss. B. 15, p. 75.  
 Edderynge, *s.* the binding at the top of stakes used in making hedges, also called *ether*, 126/6; edderynges, *pl.* 126/14.  
 Eest, *s.* east, 133/20.  
 Effectually, *adv.* sincerely, 145/16.  
 Ellore, *s.* the elder tree, 126/2. Usually *eller*, which also means the alder; see E. Plant-names, p. 168.  
 Elne, *s.* an ell, 15/23.  
 Encrease, *v.* increase, 17/18.  
 Endent, *v.* indent, 23/15.  
 Endure, *v.* to last, 148/36.  
 Enfecte, *adj.* infected, 58/12.  
 Enforme, *v.* inform, 11/29, 155/8; en-fourme, teach, tell, 134/26.  
 Englysshe, English, 166/8.  
 Ensampl, *s.* example, 36/9.  
 Entente, *s.* purpose, 7/11.  
 Enterfyre, *s.* interference of the feet, the knocking of one foot against the other, 109/1. See the note. "Enterfayring is hewing one leg on another, and striking off the skin;" G. Markham, Husbandry, c. 58.  
 Ere, *conj.* before, 15/35; er, 36/2.  
 Eschewe, *v.* to eschew, 146/107.

- Estate, *s.* state, condition, 70/28 ; estates, *pl.* wealthy persons, 153/9.  
 Euery, *adj.* every, 127/40.  
 Ewerie, *s.* ewery, place for pitchers, etc. ; note to 140/8.  
 Exaltation of the holye crosse, i.e. Sept. 14, 37/16.  
 Expende, *v.* to spend, 147/13.  
 Extende, *v.* to extend, reach to, 147/14.  
 Eyen, *s. pl.* eyes, 48/6 ; eien, 48/8.
- Faculty, *s.* ability, wealth, 147/18.  
 Facyons, *s. pl.* fashions, kinds, 2/3.  
 Faldynge, *s.* a kind of frieze, or rough cloth, 44/14. See Chaucer, C. T. 393.  
 Falowe, *v.* to plough, 16/3. See below.  
 Falowyng, *s.* ploughing land for the first time (for wheat), 4/42. See 16/3.  
 Fan, *v.* to winnow corn, 35/6 ; fande, *pp.* 35/10.  
 Farcyon, *s.* the farcy, a disease of horses, in which swellings appear on his body, 93/1. Cf. *F. farcer*, to stuff.  
 Faste, *adv.* very near, close, 25/32.  
 Fayne, *adj.* obliged, compelled, 151/14.  
 Feitergrasse, *s.* the name of a kind of grass (spelt *fettergrass* in ed. 1598), 59/11.  
 Felle, *v.* to fell, 131/1.  
 Fellow, *s.* fellow, i.e. neighbouring furrow, 9/9.  
 Fellyes, *s. pl.* pieces of wood joined together to make the circle of a wheel, 5/9.  
 Felly-fole, *s.* filly-foal, filly, 68/52.  
 Female hempe, *s.* wild hemp, 146/57.  
 Fenbrede, *s.* mud-board, or mould-board, 3/4, 27. See note to 3/1.  
*Fen* = mud ; as commonly in M. E.  
 Fence, *v.* to form a fence, 125/5.  
 Fenel-sedes, *s. pl.* fennel seeds, 20/18.  
 Ferny, *adj.* covered with ferns, 50/10.  
 Ferre, *adv.* far, 48/11, 150/6, 164/8.  
 Ferthermore, *adv.* furthermore, besides, 151/17.  
 Fetelockes, *s. pl.* fetlocks, 99/3.  
 Fette, *pt. s.* brought, 166/34.  
 Fettle, *pp.* fastened together, bound, 5/10.  
 Filberdes, *s. pl.* filberts, 136/3.  
 Flaïne, *pp.* flayed, 58/21. See Fley.  
 Flanke, *s.* flank, 85/4.  
 Flasshes, *s. pl.* marshy places, 70/8.  
 The usual sense is "pool."
- Flaxen wheate, *s.* flaxen wheat, a kind of wheat, 34/23, 25.  
 Flayle, *s.* flail, 5/33.  
 Fley, *imp. s.* flay, 38/11 ; *spelt* flee, 58/8.  
 Flokes, *s. pl.* flukes, 56/16.  
 Floures, *s. pl.* flowers, 156/6.  
 Flyntered, *pp.* said of "small corn wrinkled and dried," 34/43. Cf. *flinders*, fragments ; and cf. *splintered*.  
 Flytte, *imp. s.* remove, 148/15 ; flyte, *v.* 18/3 ; flytteth, *pr. s.* 18/28. Lit. "flit."  
 Fodered, *pp.* foddered, fed, 70/40.  
 Folden, *pp.* folded, 52/6.  
 Foled, *pp.* foaled, 118/10.  
 Foole, *s.* foal, 68/7, 11 ; fools, *pl.* 56/4.  
 Fooled, *pp.* foaled, 68/13.  
 Foolynge-tyme, *s.* foaling time, 68/40.  
 For, *prep.* against, to prevent, 18/33, 32/8, 35/8, 44/15, 51/9, 52/1, 70/46, 139/19. (Observe this use.)  
 For nothyng, *phr.* on no account, 124/14, 138/10.  
 Forecrope, *s.* fore-crop, a part of a cow or bullock, 57/2. I learn that the *fore-crop* is the upper part of the fore quarter of an ox, and lies between the neck and the sirloin. "... it shews he is wel tallowed, and so doth the *crop* behind the shoulders ;" Markham, *Husbandry, Of Oxen*.  
 Fore-wedge, *s.* fore-wedge (before the coulter), 4/23.  
 Forowe, *s.* a furrow, 4/6.  
 Forther, *adj.* front, foremost, 92/2. "*Forther-fete*, the forefeet ;" Wright.  
 Fortune, *v.* to chance, happen, 3/1, 120/17, 124/38, 153/24.  
 Fote, plough-foot, 4/12. See Plough-fote.  
 Fote-teame, *s.* (apparently) the end of the drawing-gear which is fastened to a plough or harrow, 4/37, 15/12. See *Wrethyng-temes*.  
 Foughten, *pp.* fought, 169/11.  
 Foule, *s.* an ulcer in a cow's foot, 64/1.  
 Freeholders, *s. pl.* freeholders, 130/22.  
 Freteth, *pr. s.* eats away, 20/7.  
 Fretter, *s.* a corrosive, 43/5.  
 Fullymartes, *s. pl.* polecats, 146/31. M.E. *fulmart*.  
 Fyfte, *adj. num.* fifth, 75/3.  
 Fylberdes, *s. pl.* filberts, 140/4.  
 Fyled, *pp.* defiled, dirtied, 41/1, 45/4.  
 Fyllettes, *s. pl.* fillets, 76/6. "*Filet*, the fillet of a beast ;" Cotgrave.

- "*Fillets*, in a horse, are the fore-parts of the shoulder next the breast;" Bailey's Dict. vol. i. ed. 1735.
- Fynde, *v.* to provide with, furnish, 153/20.
- Fyre-wodde, *s.* fire-wood, 132/2.
- Fysking, *s.* fidgeting, roaming about, 45/2. See examples in my note to P. Plowman, C. 10/153.
- Fytches, *s. pl.* vetches, 20/40, 70/8.
- Garches, *s. pl.* an error for garthes, i.e. hoops, 134/7. See Garthe-webbe.
- Garniter, the officer who had care of the granary, note to 140/8.
- Garthe-webbe, *s.* webbing for a girth, 10/23. "*Garth*, a hoop or band;" Wright. See Garches. A *girth-web* is mentioned A.D. 1502; see Rogers, Hist. Agric. vol. iii.
- Geare, *s.* gear, implements, 5/2; gere, 142/7.
- Geld, *pr. pl.* cut too high (said of beans), 29/9.
- Gelly, *s.* jelly, 44/7.
- Gete, *pp.* gotten, taken up, 129/11; gette, gotten from, taken from, 137/7. A.S. *geten*, pp.
- Gethereth, *pr. s.* gathers, 28/5.
- Gise, *s.* guise, fashion, way, 35/8.
- Glaunder, *s.* glander, usually in the plural, 87/2. See below.
- Glaunders, *s.* glanders, a disease in the glands, 86/1.
- Gleyd, *s.* kite, 146/31. A.S. *glida*.
- Glose, *s.* gloss, comment, 168/34.
- Glotomy, *s.* gluttony, 152/23.
- Gloues, *s. pl.* gloves, 142/3.
- Gnappe, *v.* to bite slightly; gnappe of, rub off with their teeth (said of horses), 93/6. The same as *kneppe*, to bite slightly, in Best's Rural Economy in Yorkshire (Surtees Society); mod. E. *nip*.
- Golds, *s. pl.* corn marigold, 20/25; gouldes, 20/4. See Ray, Gloss. B. 16, p. 83; Tusser, note to 39/21.
- Gore, *v.* to gore, 70/43.
- Gostely, *adj.* spiritual, 167/38.
- Goten, *pp.* gotten, 154/9.
- Gouldes, *s. pl.* corn-marigolds, 20/4; golds, 20/25.
- Goute, *s.* gout, 65/1.
- Gowty, *adj.* gouty, 56/6.
- Goyng vppon, walking about upon the ground, 18/23.
- Graffe, *v.* to graft, 136/6.
- Graffe, *s.* a graft, slip, 136/17.
- Graffynge-sawe, saw for grafting, 136/7.
- Grammer-schole, *s.* grammar-school, 147/11.
- Grasier, *s.* grazier, 40/1.
- Grauelynge, *s.* graveling, caused by gravel in a horse's foot, 114/1.
- Grayned, *pp.* forked at the top, 41/9.
- "*Grain*, a prong of a fork; Wright. (Common). "*Grain-staff*, a quarter-staff with a pair of short tines at the end, which they call *grains*;" Ray, Gloss. B. 16, p. 84.
- Greatte; a greatte, by wholesale, 134/18.
- Gregorye, St. Gregory, 162/12; Gregory, 155/24, 161/15, 165/26, 167/6.
- Grese, *v.* to grease, 40/24.
- Greued, *pp.* grieved, 147/15.
- Gristell, *s.* gristle, 89/2.
- Grombalde-brydge, Grimbald Bridge, near Knaresborough, 79/10.
- Grosse sale, wholesale, 36/25.
- Grote, *s.* groat, 20/15.
- Gurthe, *s.* girth, 142/5.
- Gyrre, *s.* a disease of cattle, probably giddiness, 70/33. Cf. F. *giver*, to turn.
- Gyse, *s.* guise, way, custom, 133/1.
- Hachet, *s.* hatchet, 127/2.
- Hades, *s. pl.* strips of greensward, 6/17.
- "*Hade*, a ridge of land, a small piece of greensward at the end of arable land;" Wright.
- Half-throne, *v.* to cover sheaves in some particular manner, 31/3. It is believed to be the same as the Shropshire *hackle*, which is to put four sheaves of wheat into a shock, and then to place another sheaf (upright) with the ears downwards, on the top. This agrees with *covering* except in the use of 4 sheaves for 8.
- Halomshyre, Hallamshire (in which is Sheffield), 17/21.
- Halte, *v.* to go lamely, 98/5.
- Halter, *s.* halter, 142/2.
- Halue, *s.* half, 127/4.
- Hamper, *s.* hamper, basket, 11/23.
- Hampole, Richardus de, 165/39.
- Handbyll, *s.* small bill-hook, 127/2.
- Handel, *v.* to handle, 40/24.
- Handsome, *adj.* handy, convenient, 24/22.

- Harde, *pp.* heard, 164/30.  
 Harde by, *phr.* close, 129/4.  
 Harowe-bulles, *s. pl.* chief pieces of timber composing an ox-harrow, 15/6.  
 Harowed, *pp.* harrowed, 15/2.  
 Harowe-tyndes, *s. pl.* tines or prongs of a harrow, 15/10.  
 Hasell, *s.* hazel, 24/16, 124/5.  
 Hassell, *adj.* stiff, said of a soil; see it partially defined in *note* to 2/6. "*Hasle*, stiff, as clay; Essex."—Wright. "A *haisel* mould, which I count to be one of the best wealdish moulds, being a compound mould, and very good for marle."—G. Markham, *Enrichment of the Weald*, 1649, p. 9.  
 Hasty, *adj.* early, 12/39.  
 Hatched, *put for* hatchet, *note* to 46/3. "Brains of a hatchet," a term for the oily substance obtained by burning linen on the head of a hatchet.  
 Hatte, *s.* hat, 142/2.  
 Haue, *v.* take, 58/12.  
 Hawdod, *s.* corn bluebottle, *Centaurea Cyanus*, 20/28; haudoddes, *pl.* 20/4. Cf. *hardewes*, a name for the wild succory (*Cichorium Intybus*) in Turner's *Names of Herbes*.  
 Hawe, *s.* an excrescence in the eye of a horse, 89/1.  
 Hearbgrace, *s.* herb-grace, rue, *note* to 144.  
 Heare, *s.* hair, 64/5, 98/4; heares, *pl.* 47/5, 11.  
 Hearynges, *s. pl.* herrings, 36/10.  
 Hecheled, *pp.* heckled, combed, 146/42.  
 Hedge-rote, *s.* hedge-root, stump, 132/12.  
 Hedgyngebyll, *s.* bill for hedging, 5/32.  
 Heed, *s.* head, 47/4, 102/3.  
 Heed, *pr. s. subj.* 2 *p.* behead, cut off the top, crop, 132/9; heeded, *pp.* 132/15.  
 Heeth-grounde, *s.* ground covered with heather, 2/7.  
 Hele-wedge, *s.* heel-wedge (behind the coulter), 4/23.  
 Helpe, *v.* mend, cure, 58/2.  
 Herdman, *s.* herdsman, 6/10; herde-man, 123/15.  
 Heringes, *s. pl.* herrings, 36/12.  
 Herode, Herod, 166/27.  
 Hert, *s.* heart, middle, 100/4; herte, 114/3.  
 Hey, *s.* hay, 23/4, 66/14; heye, 146/85.  
 Hey-cockes, *s. pl.* haycocks, 25/15.  
 Hey-rope, *s.* hay rope, 64/5.  
 His, *pr. gen.* its, 9/8.  
 Hode, *s.* hood, 142/2.  
 Hoggess, *s. pl.* hogs, 121/9.  
 Hole, *adj.* whole, healthy, 149/13.  
 Hole-footed, *adj.* whole-footed, web-footed, 146/26.  
 Holer, *adj. compar.* more whole; healthier, 149/13.  
 Hole-straw wheat, wheat with a whole or solid straw, *note* to 34/43.  
 Holmes, *s. pl.* put for *homes* = hames, 5/25, 15/41. See *Homers*.  
 Holpen, *pp.* helped, cured, 61/6, 82/2.  
 Holsome, *adj.* wholesome, 25/18.  
 Holy bread, *s.* ordinary leavened bread cut into small pieces, blessed, and given to the people, 11/18. See *note* to P. *Plowman*, C. xvi. 210.  
 Holye, *s.* holly, 124/5.  
 Holyrode-day, the day of the holy cross, Sept. 14 (see 17/16), 134/21. See *Phillips' Dict.* ed. 1706.  
 Hombers, *s. pl.* horse-collars, 5/24, 15/41. Also called *hamberwes*, *ham-boroughs*; from *hame*, one of the bent pieces of wood to which the trace is fastened, and A.S. *beorgan*, to protect. Lit. 'hame-protectors.'  
 Honger, *s.* hunger, 30/14.  
 Hopper, *s.* a seed-basket, 10/22, 25; 34/10. M.E. *hoper* (P. *Plowman*).  
 Horne, *s.* horn, 142/3.  
 Horse, *s. gen.* horse's, 82/1, 91/1.  
 Horse-harowes, *s. pl.* harrows drawn by horses, 15/15.  
 Horse-leche, *s.* horse-doctor, 120/6.  
 Horse-mayster, *s.* horse-master, 120/1.  
 Houe, *s.* hoof, 78/6, 98/2.  
 Hoystynge, *s.* coughing, 59/3. '*Hoist*, a cough; East.'—Wright.  
 Hucbone, *s.* hip-bone, 57/3. More commonly *huckle*.  
 Hurdes, *s. pl.* hards, coarse flax, 146/39.  
 Hurdels, *s. pl.* hurdles, 18/35.  
 Husbandes, *s. pl.* husbandmen, 3/1.  
 Huske, *s.* husk, 14/12.  
 Huswife, *s.* housewife, 148/1.  
 Hyer, higher, *prol.* 33.  
 Hynder, *adj.* latter, 148/11.  
 Jagged, *adj.* jagged, 20/26.  
 James, St., 169/12.  
 Jelly, *s.* jelly, 58/23.  
 Jeoperdy, *s.* jeopardy, peril, 5/13, 139/2.

Therome, St. Jerome, 155/1, 161/20;  
Jerome, 168/7.  
In lyke, alike, 25/6.  
In regarde, *phr.* for his part, lit. according to his estimation, 153/6.  
Inam, *applied* to wheat, *note* to 9/13.  
Cf. "*Innom barley*, barley sown the second crop after the ground is fallowed; *North*."—Ray, Gloss. B. 15, p. 50.  
Infecte, infected, 164/29.  
Infydeles, *s. pl.* infidels, 166/45.  
Inke, *s.* ink, 142/4.  
Intend, *pr. pl.* intend, 148/1.  
Inuentorys, *s. pl.* inventories, 151/2.  
Iob, Job, 156/7.  
Iohan, John, 165/34.  
Isodorus, St. Isidore, 164/18; 165/37, 49; 169/33; Isodore, 165/29.  
Judas, 166/25.  
Iudges, *s. pl.* castles (in chess), *prol.* 20.  
  
Kedlokes, *s. pl.* charlock, *Sinapis arvensis*, 10/13, 20/3, 9. Also called *cadlock*, *cadlick*, *chadlock*, *chedlock*, *carlock*, *charlock*, *callock*, etc.  
Kelles, *s. pl.* cases of maggots, 18/10; gossamer-threads, 54/22. "*Kells*, cones of silkworms; *kell*, a film over the eyes;" Wright. The usual sense is 'caul.'  
Kente, Kent, 2/15.  
Kerchef, *s.* kerchief, handkerchief, 142/1.  
Keys, *s. pl.* part of a cart, 5/22.  
Knolles, *s. pl.* knolls, mounds, lumps, 128/29.  
Knownen, *pp.* known, 8/2.  
Knyfe, *s.* knife, 142/6.  
Knytte, *pp.* joined together as a swarm of bees, 122/9, 22; *knytte*, *v.* to join, 122/10.  
Kydde, *v.* to bind up faggots in bundles, 131/7, 132/7. See below.  
Kyddes, *s. pl.* faggots, 5/29. "*Kyddde*, a fagotte;" Palsgrave.  
Kyd-wodde, *s.* faggot-wood, 134/20.  
Kye, *s. pl.* cows, 56/7, 146/10. A. S. *cý*, pl. of *cū*.  
Kylde, *pp.* killed, 103/6.  
Kynde, *s.* nature, 128/23.  
Kyrfe, *s.* incision, 136/10. "*Kerf*, an incision;" Wright. Derived from A. S. *ceorfan*, to carve, to cut. Spelt *kerfe* in Ray, Gloss. B. 16, p. 85.  
Kyrrels, *s. pl.* kirtles, skirts, 151/16.

Lampas, *s.* an excrescence of flesh above the teeth in horses, which often prevents their eating, 81/1. "*Hava de bestias*, the *lampas*, a disease in the mouth of beasts, when such long barbles grow in their mouthes, that they cannot well feed;" Minshew, Spanish Dict.  
Landes, *s. pl.* 5/4. Evidently some part of the gear for ploughing, but I can find no such word. Perhaps an error for *bandes*, i.e. bands. Mr. Peacock, in his Glossary of Manley Words, has — "*Lanes*, *Lains*, an iron ring at the end of the beam of a plough to which the horses are yoked." Perhaps this is it.  
Landes, *s. gen.* field's, 2/17; *landes*, *s. pl.* ridges, 13/7.  
Lankesshyre, Lancashire, 2/26.  
Lanses, *s. pl.* shoots, 138/1.  
Lathe-legged, *pp.* slender-legged, 78/4.  
Lathes, *s. pl.* laths, 15/9.  
Laude, *s.* praise, 163/1, 167/17.  
Lazare, Lazarus, 166/22.  
Ledde, *pp.* carried, 28/12.  
Ledder, *s.* leather, 10/23.  
Lees, *s. pl.* leas, pastures, 148/18.  
Leisshe, *s.* leash, 142/3.  
Lene, *v.* to lean, 124/35.  
Lenger, *adj. compar.* longer, 3/38, 3/55, 70/13; *adv.* 67/4, 128/32.  
Lente-corne, *s.* Lent corn, spring corn, 148/7.  
Let hym blode, bleed him, 48/7.  
Let, *v.* hinder, 24/19: *lette*, *pr. pl.* 82/2, 164/1.  
Lette, *s.* hindrance, 135/6.  
Leue, *v.* leave off, 41/15.  
Leue, *s.* leave, 143/7.  
Leuse, *v.* to loosen, 126/16, 129/10.  
Ley, *v.* to lay, lay eggs, 146/23.  
Leycestershyre, 2/26.  
Leye-hey, *s.* meadow hay, 25/34.  
Leys, *s. pl.* pasture-grounds, 6/17, 8/5.  
Leysshe, *s.* leash, 10/25.  
Like, *pr. pl.* thrive, 53/9.  
Linsede, *s.* linseed, 146/53.  
Lockes, *s. pl.* pieces torn off a fleece, 146/79.  
Lode, *v.* load, carry, 32/2.  
Lodynge, *s.* loading, 22/11.  
Loken, *pp.* locked or closed up, 146/53. See note.  
Lollers, *s. pl.* lollards, 166/45.  
Long-eare, *s.* long-ear, a kind of barley, 13/22.

- Longe-rained, *pp.* long in the reins, 78/2.  
 Longe-soughte, *s.* lung disease, 59/2. A.S. *sukt*, disease (Grein).  
 Loode, *v.* to carte, 146/87.  
 Loppe, *v.* to lop, 132/1.  
 Lose, *adj.* loose, 27/4.  
 Loungely, *adv.* lovingly, kindly, 152/16.  
 Lowe-brawnd, *pp.* strong in the lower muscles, 75/2.  
 Lower, *adj. compar.* lower, 125/5.  
 Lowsy, *adj.* full of lice, 117/1.  
 Luke-warme, *adj.* lukewarm, tepid, 44/12.  
 Lye, *s.* urine, *note* to 44/8. Cf. I Hen. IV. ii. i. 23. O.F. *lie*, lees.  
 Lyfte, *adj.* left, 28/4.  
 Lyke, *v.* to thrive, 57/10, 123/14, 140/8.  
 Lyncoln, 2/27.  
 Lyne, *s.* measuring line, 124/28.  
 Lyngel, *s.* a shoemaker's thread, 142/6. "Lyngell, that souters sowe with, *lignier*;" Palsgrave.  
 Lyn-pinnes, *s. pl.* lynch-pins, 5/19. See *Lynchpin* in my Etym. Dict.  
 Lytter, *s.* litter, straw for a horse's bed, 100/3.  
 Lyuer, *s.* liver, 55/15.
- Malander, *s.* a sore place on the inside of the fore-leg of a horse, 94/1. "Malandres, the malanders, a horses disease;" Cotgrave. "Malendre," the same.  
 Male, *s.* bag, pack, portmanteau, 142/2.  
 Mall, *s.* a mallet or club, 126/14; malles, *pl.* 15/46.  
 Mallet, *s.* mallet, wooden hammer, 136/15.  
 Malte, *s.* malt, 146/14.  
 Mane, *s.* a piece of grass left unmown, 23/17.  
 Maple, *s.* maple, 126/3.  
 Marke, St. Mark, 170/3.  
 Marle, *s.* rich earth used as manure, 2/6; a blue marble-like earth, *note* to 16/29-35.  
 Marley, *s.* marl, 138/26. See above.  
 Marre, *v.* mar, spoil, 70/50.  
 Marreis, *adj.* marsh, 5/15; marreys, 124/20.  
 Marreys, *s.* marsh, 54/13.  
 Martok, Martock (Somersetshire), 27/17.  
 Martilmas, Martinmas, St. Martin's day, Nov. 11, 134/21.
- Mathes, *s. pl.* maggots, 18/8, 45/1. "Cimex, *maðu*;" Wright's Vocab. i. 24.  
 Mathes, *s. pl.* stinking chamomile, corn chamomile, *Anthemis Cotula*, 20/4. Called *stynkyng* maydweede in Turner's Names of Herbes.  
 Matter, *s.* pus in a sore, 87/3.  
 Mattockes, *s. pl.* mattocks, tools to dig up roots and weeds, 8/20. See Beate.  
 Mawe, *s.* the stomach, 102/2.  
 May, *pr. s.* can, is able, 66/20.  
 Mayn whyte, principally white, 68/70.  
 Meane, *adj.* middling, ordinary, 2/6, 124/19; neither very moist nor very dry, 70/27.  
 Meane, *s.* means, way, 166, *rubric*; 167, *rubric*.  
 Measure, *s.* measure, moderation, 147/10.  
 Meete, *imp. s.* measure, 146/16.  
 Medle, *v.* to mix, 17/16; medled, *pp.* 2/6, 34/21, 43/1.  
 Melch kye, *s. pl.* milch cows, 70/21.  
 Mete, *adj.* even, 138/23.  
 Metelye, *adv.* meetly, 12/7.  
 Middes, *s.* midst, 48/7.  
 Mo, *adj. compar.* more (in number), 58/34; 141/50. A.S. *mā*. See Moo.  
 Moche, *adj.* large, 47/3, 15.  
 Moderate, *v.* lessen, 44/26.  
 Molde, *s.* mould, 9/6; moldes, *pl.* pieces of earth, 45/7.  
 Molten, *pp.* melted, 43/4, 45/7.  
 Moneth, *s.* month, 93/8.  
 Moo, *adj. compar.* more (in number), 40/8, 121/20. See Mo.  
 Moralytes, *s. pl.* moral principles, *prol.* 15.  
 More, *adj. compar.* greater, 127/4.  
 More harder, *adj. compar.* harder, 137/13.  
 More hyer, *adj. compar.* higher, 67/3.  
 Morfounde, *s.* a disease in a horse's feet, occasioned by its taking cold, 100/1. "Se morfounde, to take cold, catch cold;" Cotgrave.  
 Morteys, *s.* mortise, 3/13, 20, 39. (It is a hole in a piece of wood made to receive something that can be tightly wedged up in it.)  
 Mosse, *s.* moss, 131/3.  
 Mouldywarpe-hilles, *s. pl.* mole-hills, 23/20.  
 Mountenance, *s.* amount, 58/31.

- Mournynge, *s.* a disease appearing either in the tongue or back of a horse, apparently cancer, 83/1, 87/1, 119/4. See *mourruus*, *mourue* in Cotgrave.
- Mowen, *adj.* mown, 70/32.
- Mowes, *s. pl.* stacks, heaps, 32/3.
- Mucke, *s.* manure, 17/2.
- Mucke, *v.* to manure, 17/5.
- Muck-wayne. *s.* manure-cart, 146/86.
- Muldes, *s. pl.* pieces of mould or earth, 41/3, 45/8, 124/23.
- Murren, *s.* murrain, 57/13.
- Murtheryng, *s.* murdering, killing, 51/6.
- Musell, *s.* muzzle, *note* to 39/9.
- Myldewe-grass, *s.* mildew-grass, 54/17.
- Myldewes, *s. pl.* mildews, 44/24.
- Myllettes, *s. pl.* a disease behind the fetlocks of horses, 110/1.
- Mynstratours, *s. pl.* ministers, 165/5.
- Nache, *s.* the point of the rump, 57/3. See Old Country Words, ed. Britten, p. 105. "A big *nach*, round and knotty," said of an ox; G. Markham, Husbandry, Of Oxen.
- Narowe, *adj.* narrow, close, difficult, 4/26.
- Nathes, *s. pl.* naves of a wheel, 5/9.
- Nauyll, *s.* navel, 57/6.
- Nauyllgall, *s.* navel-gall, described as a kind of sore on a horse's back, 105/1.
- Necessaryest, *adj. superl.* most necessary, 1/4. (Used with *most* preceding).
- Nede, *s.* need, necessity, 44/16.
- Nedle, *s.* needle, 142/5.
- Nether, *adj. compar.* lower, 5/22, 31/7.
- Norfolke, 2/27.
- Nose-thrilles, *s. pl.* nostrils, 84/2; *nosethrylles*, 75/3; *sing.* *nosethryll*, 85/3.
- Nother, *for* other; an nother, another, 2/19.
- Nourysshe, *v.* nourish, 130/24.
- Nowe-a-dayes, *adv.* nowadays, 153/5.
- Nycked, *pp.* notched, 21/4.
- Nyckes, *s. pl.* notches, 4/38, 122/41.
- Occupy, *v.* use, 1/5; *occupie*, 148/10; *occupied*, *pp.* used, 15/36.
- Of, *adv.* off, away from it, 136/12; off, 27/7, 139/19.
- Of, *prep.* during, 6/13.
- Oke, *s.* oak, 15/7, 24/10.
- Oke-settes, *s. pl.* young plants or cuttings of oak, 124/8.
- Oke-water, *s.* oak-water, apparently water in which oak-galls have been steeped, 87/2.
- Olde, *adj.* old; the olde of the mone, at full moon, 12/37.
- Ones, *adv.* once, 147/28.
- Or, *adv.* ere, before, 5/1, 119/8.
- Oratory, 165/47.
- Orchyarde, *s.* orchard, 122/3.
- Order, *v.* determine, 3/41.
- Ordeyne, *v.* to order, send, 146/14.
- Osyerde, *s.* osier, 130/12.
- Otemele, *s.* oatmeal, 14/10.
- Otes, *s. pl.* oats, 13/26, 14/1.
- Other whyle, *adv.* sometimes, occasionally, 4/16, 48/4, 60/5.
- Ouer, *adj.* upper, 5/22, 91/2, 133/14.
- Ouerlay, *v.* cover by laying over, 127/41.
- Ouermoste, *adj. superl.* uppermost, 131/16.
- Ouerplus, *s.* overplus, surplus, 148/8.
- Ouer-rechyng, *s.* overstepping, 113/1.
- Ouerthwarte, *adv.* across, sideways, 7/21, 112/3, 131/14.
- Oughte, *pl. s.* owed, 146/106.
- Outragious, *adj.* extravagant, 150/6.
- Oxe-bowes, *s. pl.* bent pieces of wood passing round the necks of oxen, and fastened to the yoke, 5/44.
- Oygrane wheate, white wheat, *note* to 34/23.
- Oyse, *v.* to ooze, 111/2.
- Pale, *s.* paling, 40/3.
- Paper, *s.* paper, 142/4.
- Parcels, *s. pl.* parts, divisions, 68/63.
- Parchment, *s.* parchment, 142/4.
- Pare, *v.* to pare, cut, 124/30, 136/16; *pared*, *pp.* 136/21.
- Partener, *s.* partner, 134/27, 30.
- Paryng, *s.* paring, 100/12.
- Paste, *adv.* past, over, 13/15.
- Pasturnes, *s. pl.* pasterns, 112/3.
- Pastyme, *s.* pastime, something to pass or fill up leisure time, 146/47.
- Pater-noster, 166/12.
- Paule, St. Paul, 153/28, 158/6, 161/8, 169/29.
- Payle, *s.* pail, 56/7.
- Payre, *v.* to impair, make worse, 97/3; *payreth*, *pr. s.* spoils, 4/26.
- Pease, peas, 10/3, 8. Properly a singular form.
- Peeke countreye, country round the Peak, in Derbyshire, 39/16.

- Peeke-wheate, *s.* peek-wheat, a kind of poor wheat, 34/41. Cf. *peeked*, thin.  
 Pees, *s.* pease, 10/14. See Pease.  
 Pees-stubble, *s.* pea-stubble, 34/5.  
 Pelte-rotte, *s.* rot in the fleece, 54/33.  
 Penknife, *s.* penknife, 142/5.  
 Penne, *s.* pen, 142/4.  
 Pens, *s. pl.* pence, 54/10.  
 Penny, *s.* penny, 36/11.  
 Penny-grasse, *s.* a kind of grasse that never bears a flower, 54/8. It must therefore be distinct from *Rhinanthus Crista-galli*, also called *penny-grass* by some; see Old Country Words, ed. Britten, p. 37.  
 Perche, *s.* perch, 30½ sq. yards, 12/5.  
 Perfyte, *adj.* perfect, 141/5.  
 Perseth, *pr. s.* pierceth, 141/8.  
 Peruse, *v.* to go through with, continue, 131/15; *imp. s.* 124/35; examine, 40/23; survey, 30/7.  
 Perysshynge, *s.* piercing, 62/17. See the note.  
 Peter, St., 155/13.  
 Peyhenne, *s.* peahen, 146/28.  
 Peynes, *s.* pains; a disease in a horse's fetlocks, 111/1.  
 Pikstaues, *s. pl.* pikestaves (but here used, apparently, of a part of a cart, possibly the supports of the shafts), 5/23.  
 Pill, *v.* to peel, note to 55/16.  
 Plasshed, *pp.* plashed, 127/19. See below.  
 Plasshyng, *s.* plashing, 124/2. To plash is to lower and close up a broad-spread hedge, by partially cutting off the branches, and entwining them with those left upright.  
 Playster, *s.* plaister, 164/22.  
 Pleched, *pp.* pleached, plashed, 127/22. See Plasshyng.  
 Pleytes, *s. pl.* plaits, folds, 151/17.  
 Ploughe-beame, *s.* plough-beam, 3/2, 9. See note to 3/1.  
 Ploughe-eare, *s.* plough-ear, 3/5, 42; 4/34. See note to 3/1.  
 Ploughe-fote, *s.* plough-foot, 3/5, 38. See note to 3/1.  
 Plough-geare, *s.* instruments requisite for ploughing, 5/45.  
 Ploughehedde, *s.* the same as the share-beam, 2/10. See Sharbeame.  
 Ploughe-mal, *s.* plough-hammer or mallet, 3/6. See note to 3/1.  
 Ploughe-shethe, *s.* plough-sheath, 2/3. See note to 3/1.  
 Plough-stylte, *s.* the right-hand handle of a plough, 3/21. See note to 3/1.  
 Ploughetayle, *s.* the left-hand and longer handle of the plough, 2/23; 3/15, 19.  
 Ploughe-yren, *s.* plough-iron, iron part of a plough (share and coulter), 5/2; ploughe-yrons, *pl.* 2/19.  
 Plowe, *v.* plough, 6/14.  
 Plowes, *s. pl.* ploughs, 2/1.  
 Plummes, *s. pl.* plums, 136/4, 140/1.  
 Plyenge, *pres. pt.* bending, 24/14.  
 Pockes, *s. pl.* pocks, pustules, a disease in sheep, 49/1.  
 Pole, 12/5. See Perche.  
 Polerd wheat, *s.* coarse wheat, pollard wheat, 34/23. So called because it has no awns: to *poll* is to clip, etc. See Pollard.  
 Pöleyn, *s. pl.* poultry, fowls, 146/21.  
 Pollard, short-horned, said of a ram, note to 37/6. See Polerd.  
 Pommies, pumice, 142/4; pomis, 100/6.  
 Ponch, *s.* punch, 139/9.  
 Pondre, *v.* to ponder, consider, 153/28.  
 Poores, *s. pl.* pores, 70/26.  
 Popeler, *s.* poplar, 130/5.  
 Potte, *s.* pot; good for the potte, good for boiling, 146/35.  
 Pottell, *s.* a pottle, two quarts, 44/8.  
 Potycarye, *s.* an apothecary, 120/8.  
 Pouertee, *s.* poverty, 147/15.  
 Pourpose, *v.* purpose, intend, 27/19.  
 Poynte, *s.* a tagged lace, 142/5.  
 Practyue, *s.* practice, 4/29; practiue, 141/21.  
 Predication, *s.* preaching, 154/19.  
 Prefixe, *v.* to fix beforehand, 157/7.  
 Processe, *s.* relation, story, tale, 2/29, 120/13; in processe, in course of time, 127/8.  
 Profe, *s.* proof, 161/24.  
 Proferre, *v.* to put into, insert, 138/13.  
 Profytablest, *adj. superl.* most profitable, 37/5.  
 Promesse, *s.* promise, 157/16, 21.  
 Propertie, *s.* method, 12/17.  
 Prouander, *s.* provender, 23/11.  
 Proued, *pp.* tried, 141/22, 23.  
 Prycke-eared, *pp.* with sharply pointed erect ears, 77/1. Cf. the phr. 'to prick up one's ears.'  
 Pulled, *pp.* gathered, 146/41.  
 Pursy, *s.* short-windedness (in a horse), 84/1. See *Pursy* in my Etym. Dict.  
 Pursynes, *s.* short-windedness, 87/4.  
 Put, *v.* push, 70/42.

- Pygges, *s. pl.* pigs, 146/89.  
 Pyke, *v.* pick, 35/3.  
 Pykforke, *s.* pitchfork, 5/6, 25/4.  
 Pyl, *v.* to peel, 134/23; *imp. s.* 134/11.  
*See* Pill.  
 Pylate, Pilate, 166/26.  
 Pyllynge, *s.* strip of bark, 136/22.  
 Pymples, *s. pl.* pimples, 49/2, 93/3.  
 Pyn-awgur, *s.* a boring-tool for making holes for pins or pegs, probably a gimlet as distinguished from a *rest-awgur*, 5/32.  
 Pynder, *s.* the petty officer of a manor, whose duty it was to impound all strange cattle straying on the common, 148/25, 39.  
 Pynfolde, *s.* pound, 148/26.  
 Pynte, *s.* pint, 58/31.  
 Pypes, *s. pl.* hollow stalks, 70/9.  
 Pyrr-stocke, *s.* a pear-stock, 137/10.  
 Pysell, *s.* pizzle, 56/7.  
 Pytchers, *s. pl.* pitchers, 141/68.
- Quicke, *adj.* alive; waxe quicke, become alive, 91/5.  
 Quikens, *s. pl.* live things, 55/16.  
 Quiteth, *pr. s.* requites, repays, 14/13.  
 Quyche, *s.* couch-grass, 14/17.  
 Quyche-hey, *s.* hay of couch-grass, 25/21.  
 Quycke, *adj.* alive, 102/4.  
 Quycke, *s.* quicke, sensitive part, 115/2.  
 Quycke-sande, *s.* quicksand, 128/24.  
 Quyckeset, *v.* make quickset hedges, 123/8.  
 Quicksettes, *s. pl.* quickset hedges, 124/3.
- Rache, *s.* a streak or mark on a horse's forehead (misprinted *rathe* in ed. 1534), 68/64. *See* the spelling *ratich* in the note to the line. '*Ratich*, a white line in a horse's face; *Yorksh.*' —Wright. *See* Rase.  
 Radel-marke, *s.* a mark made on sheep with ruddle, or red ochre, 52/5.  
 Raine, *s.* gutter, water-course, furrow between ridges, 13/7; rayne, 7/20. *See* Rean in Wright, and below.  
 Ranke, *adj.* rank, strong, 10/10, 12/20; fertile, 17/29.  
 Ranknes, *s.* abundance, repletion, 101/1.  
 Rapes, *s. pl.* turnips, 20/9. O. F. *rabe*, *rave*, 'a rape or turnep'; Cotgrave.  
 Rase, *s.* streak, mark, 73/1. *See* Rache.
- Ratch. *See* Rache.  
 Rate, *s.* rate, 121/12.  
 Rathe, *s.* an error, (in ed. 1534) for *rache*, 68/64. *See* Rache.  
 Rather, *adv. compar.* sooner, quicker, easier, 46/3, 66/22, 133/5.  
 Rathes, *s. pl.* frames of wood placed on a cart to make it broader, for carrying hay, 5/22. (Also called *raves*.)  
 Raunsome, *s.* ransom, 148/28.  
 Raye, *pr. s. subj.* have diarrhoea, 41/1. "I *beray*, I fyle ones clothes with spottes of myer, properly aboute the skyrttes, *ie crotte*." Palsgrave.  
 Rayment, *s.* raiment, apparel, 151/9.  
 Rayne, furrow, 7/20. *See* Raine.  
 Reane, *s.* gutter; furrow between the ridges of ploughed land to take off the water, 21/15; 33/6, 8, 10. *See* Raine.  
 Recheles, *adj.* reckless, 7/8.  
 Red wheate, a kind of wheat, 34/35.  
 Rede, *s.* reed, 27/21.  
 Reduce, *v.* bring back, turn, 7/15.  
 Redy, *adj.* dressed, 146/8. *See* note.  
 Reed, *pp.* shaken in a sieve, so that the chaff collects to one place, 36/3. "Ree, to pass corn through a sieve for the purpose of cleaning it from chaff;" Wright. *See* E.D.S. Gloss. B. 16, p. 89.  
 Reed, *adj.* red, 49/1, 55/2, 102/3.  
 Reedwaxe, *s.* red wax, sealing-wax, 142/4.  
 Regum primo, in the first Book of Kings (Samuel), 165/52.  
 Reke, *s.* rick, 29/13, 32/5. A.S. *hredc*.  
 Relent, *v.* to melt, 44/16.  
 Remytte, *v.* to leave, 7/14; *pr. s.* I *p.* I pass over, *prol.* 27. *See* note.  
 Ren ryot, *phr.* to run riot, 148/38.  
 Renne, *v.* to run, 138/20; renneth, *pr. s.* runs, 54/11; rennynge, *pres. pl.* running, 44/6.  
 Rennyng, *s.* running, 85/2.  
 Reparation, *s.* repair, 5/8.  
 Repes, *s. pl.* handfuls (of corn, also of beans, etc.), 29/4, 7. "*Repe*, a handful of corn;" Wright. Allied to E. *reap*.  
 Repeyled, *pp.* rippled, 146/41.  
 Reproued, *pp.* reprobate, 144/8.  
 Rere, *v.* rear, rise, 16/6.  
 Reson, *s.* reason; of reson, of course, 12/33.  
 Rest, *s.* a plough-rest, 3/4, 22. *See* note to 3/1.

- Rest-awgur, *s.* perhaps a boring-tool, the head of which *rests* against a support (?), 5/33. Or, more likely, for *wrest-angur*, one which resembles a centre-bit, and is *wrested* round (?).
- Rest-balke, *pr. s. subj.* 2 *p.* make a rest-balk, 16/31. See below.
- Reste-balkes, *s. pl.* ridges of land between furrows, 4/4.
- Retayle, *imp. s.* sell by retail, 134/1.
- Rideled, *pp.* sifted, 146/51.
- Ridge-bone, *s.* back-bone, 60/12.
- Ripeled, *pp.* rippled, stripped, 146/51.
- Role, *v.* roll, 15/50.
- Ronges, *s. pl.* steps of ladders, rungs, 134/10.
- Ronne, *v.* to run, 41/14. (Perhaps a misprint for *renne*, *q.v.*)
- Rote, *s.* root, 127/7; *rotes*, *pl.* 91/5, 129/10.
- Rounde, *adj.* in a rounded form, 33/16.
- Rowme, *s.* room, 26/8, 131/10.
- Ruddiest, *a better reading for* rudeste; see *note* to 34/38. See *Rudeste*.
- Ruddyer, *adj. compar.* redder, 48/11.
- Rudeste, *adj. sup.* ruddiest, reddest, 34/38. See *Ruddiest*.
- Rut, *s.* rutting, 37/17.
- Ry, *s.* rye, 8/14.
- Rychesse, *s.* riches, 156/1.
- Rydge, *s.* ridge, 7/20. See *Rygge*.
- Rygge, *s.* ridge; *holowe rygge*, the hollow between two ridges, 17/11.
- Rygge, *v.* ridge, 9/7; *rygged*, *pp.* ridged, in ridges, 13/2.
- Ryggynge, *s.* ridging, 13/3.
- Ryghtuousenes, *s.* justice, 157/36.
- Ryghtwysly, *adv.* righteously, 156/32.
- Ryngbone, *s.* a disease on a horse's foot, above the hoof, 98/1.
- Rysen-vppon, *s.* a disease; *lit.* 'risen upon,' swollen up, 61/1.
- Ryppon, Ripon, 17/22, 79/11.
- Sacke, *s.* sack, 10/26.
- Sadelclothe, *s.* saddlecloth, 142/2.
- Sacrament, *s.* sacrament, 145/7.
- Salesman, *s.* seller, 134/29.
- Salomon, Solomon, 157/8, 169/14, 31.
- Salue, *v.* salve, anoint, 18/35.
- Sandiuer, *s.* scoria of glass, *note* to 46/3. "*Suin de verre*, sandever, the fatty substance floating on glasse when it is red-hot in the furnace, and which being cold is as hard as stone, yet brittle and easily broken;" *Cotgrave*.
- Sandy, *adj.* sandy (said of colour), 68/74.
- Sappe-tyme, *s.* sap-time, 133/22.
- Sauegarde, *s.* safeguard, 18/32, 123/37; saue-garde, 35/8.
- Scab, *s.* sore place, sore, 42/5; *scabbe* (in horses), 116/2.
- Scabbed, afflicted with scab, 18/8, 42/1.
- Scaffolde, *s.* support of a rick, to keep it off the ground, 32/6.
- Scape, 2 *pr. s. subj.* escape, 148/43.
- Scarce, *adj.* sparing, stingy, 150/2.
- Scaresdale, Scardale, a hundred of Derbyshire, 17/21.
- Sclatte, *s.* slate, 122/38.
- Scote, *s.* privy part of a colt, 101/2. See *coli-civil*, explained in Markham's Husbandry, b. i. c. 32. Cf. *sheath* in Wright.
- Scyences, *s. pl.* scions, suckers, 140/2. "*Sciens* of cherry-trees;" W. Lawson, Orchard and Garden, 1648, p. 122. See *note*.
- Seame, *used as equivalent* to a quarter (of beans), *note* to 12/13.
- Sede-forowe, *s.* seed-furrow, 4/37.
- Selander, *s.* a disease in the bend of a horse's leg, 95/1.
- Selden, *adv.* seldom, 54/29.
- Semeth, *v. impers.* appears; *me semeth*, it appears to me, 34/12.
- Seneca, 161/9.
- Senewes, *s. pl.* sinews, 75/3.
- Sere, *imp. s.* sear, 63/7.
- Serewe, *s.* a disease in a horse's leg, on the inner side, 96/1.
- Serue, *v.* to feed animals, 146/20.
- Sethe, *v.* boil, 44/5; *imp. s.* 55/18.
- Sette, *v.* to plant, 129/1; *pp.* set, 129/20.
- Settes, *pl.* slips set in the ground to grow, cuttings, 124/10.
- Seuer, *v.* sever, separate, 53/2.
- Seueral, *adj.* several, separate, 6/6.
- Seueraltye, in, *phr.* separately, 123/28.
- Shaken, *adj.* full of cracks in the wood, 132/11.
- Shakyll, *s.* shackle, 15/13.
- Shap, *s.* privy part of a mare, 68/22.
- Sharbeame, *s.* the wooden frame to which the share of a plough is fixed, 2/10; *sharebeame*, 3/3.
- Share, *s.* ploughshare, 3/6.
- Share-hogges, *s. pl.* yearling sheep that have been once shorn, 53/4.
- Shede, *imp. s.* part, 42/4; *sheede*, *v.* to part, 110/2.

Shedynges, *s.* spilling, 35/9, 70/46.  
 Shefe, *s.* sheaf, 28/6.  
 Sheldbrede, *s.* shield-board, 2/23; 3/4, 25. See note to 3/1. And see below.  
 Sheldbredth, *s.* the same as *sheldbrede*, 2/17, 23. The form *bredth* is corrupt, by confusion of *brede* (= breadth) with *brade* (= board).  
 Sheparde, *s.* shepherd, 18/24.  
 Shepe-flekes, *s.* *pl.* hurdles for sheep, 10/35.  
 Shepehoke, *s.* sheep-hook, 41/12.  
 Sherde, *s.* a breach, 141/36.  
 Shere, *v.* to reap, 26/2, 146/85; shorne, *pp.* 26/3.  
 Sherers, *s.* *pl.* reapers, 27/3; sheep-shearers, 52/1.  
 Sheres, *s.* *pl.* shears, 41/12.  
 Shertes, *s.* *pl.* shirts, 146/45.  
 Sheryffe, *s.* sheriff, 148/40.  
 Shete, *s.* a sheet, 122/15.  
 Shethe, *s.* plough-sheath, 2/23, 3/29. See note to 3/1, and see Ploughe-shethe.  
 Sheydes, *s.* *pl.* partings, 44/17. See Shede.  
 Shifted, *pp.* moved, 141/43.  
 Shoke, *v.* to place sheaves together in rows, to shock, 31/2.  
 Sholynges, *s.* *pl.* shovellings, i.e. road-scrappings, 17/30. See note to 16/29-35.  
 Shorte-pasturned, *pp.* having a short pastern, 75/2.  
 Shote, *s.* shot, 151/20.  
 Shotes, *s.* *pl.* (put for *Slotes*), 15/8. See *Slote*.  
 Shotte, *pp.* shot up, grown, 21/19.  
 Shouell, *s.* shovel, 5/33, 17/14.  
 Shough, *s.* shock, rough hair on a horse's foot, 114/3.  
 Showed, *pp.* shoed, 142/6.  
 Showynge, *s.* shoeing, 109/4.  
 Shoyng-horne, *s.* shoe-horn, 142/1.  
 Shrede, *v.* to cut off the smaller branches of a tree, 132/1; shred, *pp.* having the smaller branches cut off, 133/2.  
 Shuld, *pt.* *s.* would, 128/34.  
 Sicle, *s.* sickle, 27/14; syckle, 28/4.  
 Sith, *s.* scythe, 23/15.  
 Skal, *s.* a scall or scab, 94/4.  
 Skeyggs, *s.* *pl.* rough oats, note to 14/15. Doubtless so called from the long awns; cf. Icel. *skegg*, a beard, Dan. *skjæg*, a beard, barb, awn. Cf. E. *shaggy*.

Skorfe, *s.* scurf, 116/2.  
 Skypyes, *s.* *pl.* baskets, 166/21. Usually *skeps*.  
 Slake, *v.* to extinguish, 169/14.  
 Slaue, *v.* to bend down, 133/15 (where it seems to mean tear by breaking down); to bend, 133/6; to slant, 127/15, 32. Cf. "I *sluwe* downe, I fall downe sodaynly;" Palsgrave. See below.  
 Slauynges, *s.* *pl.* slips, scions, 130/5. Cf. *slive*, a slip, *slive*, to slice, *slift*, a scion of a plant for propagation, not cut, but pulled off at a joint; Wright. "I *sluwe* a floure from his braunche or stalke;" Palsgrave.  
 Slecketh, *pr.* *s.* extinguishes, 169/13. See *Slake*.  
 Sleues, *s.* *pl.* sleeves (but in what sense is uncertain), 5/6.  
 Slote, *s.* rod, thin piece of wood, cross-piece of a harrow, 15/11. A *slot* or *slote* is, properly, a thin flat bar. See Ray, Gloss. B. 15. See below.  
 Slote, *s.* slit? (apparently the same as *slit* in 3/17), 4/15. The usual sense of *slot* is 'bar.' See above.  
 Sloted, *pp.* furnished with *slotes* or bars, 15/24.  
 Slote-wedges, *s.* *pl.* wedges fixed in the *slote*, 4/14. See *Slote* (= slit?).  
 Small, *s.* small part, calf of the leg, 15/8.  
 Smockes, *s.* *pl.* women's shifts, 146/45.  
 Socle, *imp.* *s.* suckle, cause to suckle, 38/4; give suck, 146/10.  
 Socket, *s.* socket, fitted end, 3/47; means of fastening on, 21/8.  
 Sodeinly, *adv.* suddenly, 2/24.  
 Soke, *v.* suck, 2/13.  
 Somer, *s.* rail or support, 5/22. Cf. *Bressomer*; also "*somers*, the rails of a cart;" Wright. See *sumpter* in my Etym. Dict.  
 Sommersetshyre, Somersetshire, 2/9.  
 Sonne, *s.* sun, 9/5; *spelt* son, 146/54.  
 Soo, *conj.* so, provided that, 43/4.  
 Sophysticallye, *adv.* sophistically, ambiguously, 68/46.  
 Sorance, *s.* sore, injury, disease, 6/29, 89/1; soraunce, 80/1, 119/1.  
 Sought, *s.* 57/13. See *Longe soughte*.  
 Souketh, *pr.* *s.* sucks, 39/11.  
 Souper, *s.* supper, 146/12.  
 Souse, *s.* pickle, brine, 121/15.  
 Sowen, *pp.* sown, 12/33, 35; 141/42.  
 Sowes, *s.* *pl.* sows, 121/9.

- Spade-graffe, *s.* the depth to which a spade will dig, about a foot, 124/33.
- Spauen, *s.* spavin, a kind of lameness, 106/1. Also, the place where spavin appears, 107/4.
- Spauen-place, *s.* place where a horse is subject to spavin, 118/3.
- Spere, *s.* spear, 142/2.
- Sperewort, *s.* spear-wort, a grass, 54/3.
- "*Flamula* is the herbe whiche we cal in englishe *Sperewurte* or *Spergrasse*;" Turner's Names of Herbes. It is the lesser spear-wort, *Ranunculus Flamula*, as the greater spear-wort, or *Ranunculus Lingua*, is of larger growth. See *Speerworty* in Pegge, Gloss. B. 6.
- Spinner, *s.* a spider, *note* to 54/22. (In Shakespeare.)
- Splent, *s.* disease in a horse's leg, 96/1; 97/1.
- Splente, *imp.* *s.* furnish with splents or laths, 122/9. See below.
- Splentes, *s.* *pl.* laths, 122/10.
- Spokes, *s.* *pl.* spokes of a wheel, 5/9.
- Spon, *pp.* spun, 146/42.
- Spores, *s.* *pl.* spurs, 142/2.
- Sporte, *s.* sport, 153/18.
- Sprede, *v.* spread, 10/38.
- Sprot-barley, *s.* sprout-barley, a kind of barley, 13/19.
- Sprutteth, *v.* sprouteth, 13/38.
- Sprynge, *s.* young wood, shoots, 126/11; 135/4, 7, 27.
- Spyndel, *s.* spindle, 103/5.
- Spyres, *s.* *pl.* shoots, sprigs, 20/12. See *note* to P. Plowman, C. xiii. 180.
- Squecke, *s.* a disease of turkeys, *note* to 144.
- Stacke, *s.* stack, 131/11.
- Staffe, *s.* a staff, stick, 41/9; handle, 21/8.
- Staffe-hokes, *s.* *pl.* staff-hooks; sharp hooks fastened to long handles to cut peas and beans, and trim hedges, 29/3.
- Stare, *v.* to stand on end, bristle up, 56/11, 98/4, 111/3.
- Starkely, *adv.* stiffly, with difficulty, 65/3.
- Staues, *s.* *pl.* staves, bars, rails, 70/45, 141/48; 'rough staves,' 3/5, 35. See *note* to 3/1.
- Staunche, *v.* to staunch, stop, 58/32.
- Staye, *s.* support, 3/41.
- Steeld, *pp.* steeled, 21/9.
- Steke, *imp.* *s.* shut, fasten, 40/14, 165/48; *v.* 167/34.
- Stele, *s.* handle, 24/18. A. S. *stel*.
- Stere, *v.* stir, 16/24.
- Sterte, *s.* stalk, 20/23. Cf. *start*=tail.
- Steryngtyme, *s.* time for stirring, 16/26.
- Stilt, *s.* the right-hand handle of a plough, 3/4. See *note* to 3/1.
- Stocke, *s.* stock, stem, 136/19.
- Stocke-heed, *s.* head or top of the stock, 138/26.
- Stole, *s.* stool, 122/17.
- Stooles, *s.* *pl.* stools; but, apparently, part of the gear of a plough, 5/44.
- Stoupe, *v.* to stoop, 21/26; to obey, 41/18.
- Stranguellyon, *s.* strangury, retention of urine, 88/1. "Stranguyllyon, a sickness, *chauldepeisse*;" Palsgrave. And see Markham, Husbandry, b. i. c. 30.
- Streyte, *adv.* close, 56/17.
- Stringe, *s.* string, 142/3.
- Strykes, *s.* *pl.* strikes, London bushels, 12/8. (The measure varied.)
- Stryndes, *s.* *pl.* streaks, 55/2.
- Stryng-halte, *s.* string-halt, a twitching lameness in horses, 108/1.
- Stubbes, *s.* *pl.* old roots, or stumps, 127/27.
- Sturdy, *s.* 'the turn,' i.e. giddiness, *note* to 62 (rubric).
- Sturred, *pp.* stirred, 17/8, 141/42.
- Sturrynge, *s.* stirring, 4/40.
- Styffe-docked, *pp.* having a stiff stumpy part of the tail, 74/2.
- Styffe-eared, *pp.* having stiff ears, 76/1.
- Stylkynges, *s.* *pl.* some part of harness for oxen, 5/4.
- Styred, *pp.* stirred, 146/108.
- Subleuate, lifted up, 165/43.
- Suet, *s.* suet, 44/7.
- Swarth, *adj.* grassy, *note* to sect. 8 (ch. 8, l. 30).
- Swathe, *s.* a row of cut grass, 23/16.
- Sweate, *v.* give out moisture, as cut grass, 23/13.
- Swyneherde, *s.* swineherd, 123/16.
- Swyngletre, the bar that swings at the heels of the horse when drawing a harrow, 15/42; swyngle-trees, *pl.* swinging bars to which traces are fixed, 5/25.
- Syde, *adj.* long, trailing, 151/14. A.S. *std*, long.
- Syde-longe all, close beside, 38/7.
- Syde-tailed, *pp.* longtailed, 77/3. See Syde.
- Syde-wedges, *s.* *pl.* side-wedges (at the side of the coulter), 4/22.

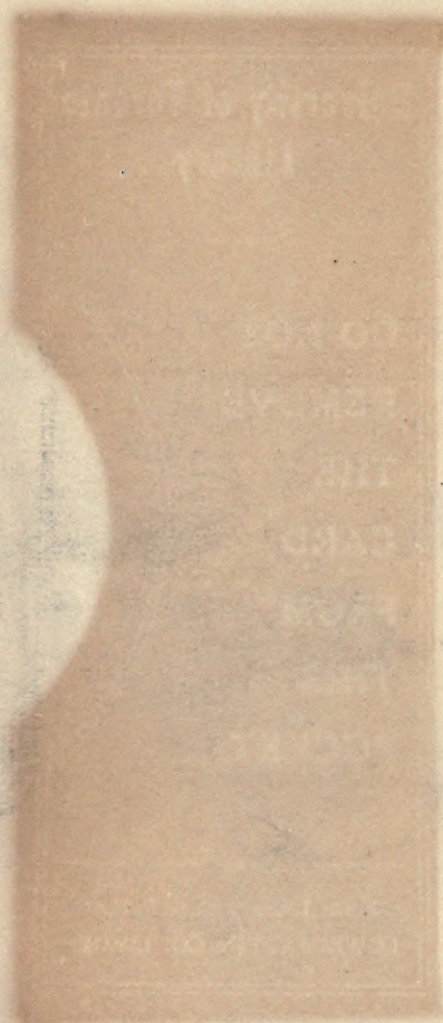
- Sye, *imp. s.* strain (milk), 146/10. "I sye mylke, or clense, *ie coulle du laict*. This term is to muche north-erne;" Palsgrave.
- Symbalo, *for* symbolo, *abl. s.* in the creed, 161/3.
- Symlytude, *s.* likeness, 160/9.
- Synagoges, *s. pl.* synagogues, 165/21.
- Synge, *v.* sing (as land), 10/19.
- Syre, *s.* sire (said of a horse), 68/75.
- Sythe, *conj.* since, 157/41.
- Syues, *s. pl.* sieves, 36/3.
- Syxt, *adj. num.* sixth, 75/3.
- Tables, *s. pl.* tablets, 141/31.
- Take, *pr. s. subj.* lay firm hold of, 126/12.
- Tancardes, *s. pl.* tankards, 141/68.
- Tarre, *s.* tar, 47/16. See *Terre*.
- Tawed, *pp.* dressed, 146/42.
- Tayle, *s.* plough-tail, 3/18.
- Tedde, *v.* to spread or turn hay, 25, rubric; tedded, *pp.* 25/2. "I teade hey, I tourne it afore it is made in cockes;" Palsgrave.
- Teddered, *pp.* tethered, fastened, 6/17.
- Teddyng, *s.* spreading, 25/4.
- Tedure, *s.* tether, 147/31.
- Tedure, *v.* to tether, 148/14.
- Tell, *v.* count, 30/5.
- Temper, *s.* adjustment, 4/46; *tempre*, 4/56.
- Tempered, *pp.* adjusted, set, 2/30, 4/3; worked together (as clay), 122/26.
- Temporal, *adj.* worldly, 154/17.
- Tenaunte, *s.* tenant, 123/31.
- Tenaunte, *s.* tenon, 139/6.
- Tennes-balles, *s. pl.* tennis balls, 91/4.
- Terre, *s.* tar, 41/4.
- Terre, *s.* tare, tares, 20/36; *ter*, 20/4.
- Terre-boxe, *s.* tar-box, 41/10.
- Thacke, *s.* thatch, 27/20. "Thacke of a house, *chaume*;" Palsgrave.
- Thacke, *v.* thatch, 27/10.
- Thacking, *s.* thatching, 27/24.
- Thanke, *s.* thanks, 169/23.
- There-as, *conj.* where, 33/13, 45/9, 58/9.
- Theyues, *s. pl.* ewes of the first year, 53/4. "Theave, a ewe of a year old (Essex); a sheep of three years old (North);" Wright. See *thaive, theave*, in Index to Old Country Words, ed. J. Britten (E.D.S.).
- Thimble, *s.* thimble, 142/5.
- Thistyls, *s. pl.* thistles, 20/3; *thistyll*, *s.* 20/6.
- Thopinion, the opinion, 12/37.
- Thorowe, *adv.* through, 23/16, 44/10, 128/19.
- Threde, *s.* thread, 142/5.
- Thresshe, *pr. s. subj. 2. p.* thresh, 35/2; *thresshen*, *pp.* 13/40; *thresshed*, *pp.* 10/9.
- Throughe, *adj.* passing through, continuous, 96/3.
- Thryfte, *s.* thrift, thriving, 129/8.
- Thyn-crested, *pp.* thin in the crest, 78/2. The crest is 'the rising part of a horse's neck;' Wright.
- Tinded, *pp.* furnished with tines, 15/24. See *Tyndes*.
- To, *adv.* too, 2/24, 2/29, 43/5, 148/34, 150/2.
- To, *prep.* in going to, 146/16.
- To, frequently inserted in imperative clauses; thus, to fel, i.e. remember to fell, 134/15; to sell, be sure to sell, 134/18; &c.
- Togwith, or Togewith, *s.* part of the draught apparatus of a plough or harrow, to which the swingle-tree was attached, 5/25, 15/43. Lit. "tug-withe;" cf. "tug-iron, an iron on the shafts of a waggon to hitch the traces to;" Wright.
- Tolle, *s.* toll, 146/17.
- Tomblynge, *s.* tumbling, 102/5.
- Toppes, *s.* tops, 31/12.
- Tothe, *v.* furnish with teeth, 24/7.
- Toure, *s.* tower, 146/104.
- Towels, *s. pl.* towels, 146/45.
- Towne-syde, *s.* farm-yard side, 10/11.
- Traile, *v.* to drag on the ground, 141/49.
- Tree, *s.* piece of wood, 3/9; *tre*, 3/11.
- Trenche, *s.* trench, 124/30.
- Tresses, *s. pl.* traces (for drawing a plough), 5/25, 15/42.
- Trouse, *s.* the trimmings of a hedge, 38/3, 126/9. "Trouse, to trim hedgings;" Wright.
- Tryanglewise, *adj.* in the form of a triangle, 4/34.
- Tucke, *v.* to tuck up short, 151/14.
- Tuell, *s.* fundament (of a horse), 85/4.
- Tuftes, *s. pl.* tufts, 70/3.
- Turne, *s.* a disease of cattle, giddiness, 62/28.
- Twon, *pp.* twined, 25/32.
- Twych, *v.* to twitch, 108/2.
- Twyrle, *v.* turn round; *twyrle* upon, i.e. turn round by pressing upon, 55/1.

- Twyse, *adv.* twice, 147/28.  
 Twytches, *s. pl.* jerks, 15/21.  
 Tyckes, *s. pl.* ticks, small insects, 135/19.  
 Tyndes, *s. pl.* tines, teeth, 15/26.  
 Tyne, *v.* to shut, 141/49. A.S. *tynan*.  
 Tythes, *s. pl.* tithes, 30/13.  
  
 Vaine, *s.* vein, 50/11; *vaines*, *pl.* 70/26.  
 Valentynes daye, Feb. 14, 137/4.  
 Vermynne, *s.* vermin (said of noxious beasts), 146/32.  
 Viues, *s. pl.* "Certaine kirkels growing under the horsess eare" (Topsell, 1607, p. 360), 91/1. "*Vyves*, a disease that an horse hath, *aniues*," Palsgrave. See *Avives* in Cotgrave.  
 Vncomely, *adj.* unsuitable, *prol.* 13.  
 Vnconuenient, *adj.* unsuitable, unbecoming, unfit, 151/16, 154/16.  
 Vnderstande, *pp.* understood, 156/27.  
 Vnderwodde, *s.* underwood, 131/2.  
 Vndouted, *adv.* doubtless, 146/48.  
 Vngiue, *v.* to give out the damp, 25/16.  
 Vnhappy, *adj.* unhappy, unfortunate, 144/20.  
 Vpholdyng, *s.* maintaining in repair, 5/38.  
 Vppe, *adj.* up, risen, 149/8.  
 Vppe, *adv.* up, 13/8.  
 Vpwarde, *adv.* upward, 16/17.  
 Vse, *pr. pl.* are accustomed, 21/29.  
 Vtter, *adj. compar.* outer, 138/12.  
 Vttermoste, *adj. superl.* most outward, 4/41.  
  
 Waincloutes, *s. pl.* pieces of iron for strengthening the axle-tree of a waggon, 5/19. On *clouts*, see J. E. T. Rogers, Hist. of Agriculture, i. 546.  
 Wained, *pp.* weaned, 135/14.  
 Waked, *pp.* awake, 146/1.  
 Wallettes, *s. pl.* wallets, 141/69.  
 Walnutshell, *s.* walnut-shell, 94/4.  
 Walnuttes, *s. pl.* walnuts, 136/4, 140/4.  
 Want, *v.* to lack, 79/12; *wante*, *pr. s. subj.* be lacking, 164/27.  
 Warde, *s.* management; harde of warde, harde to manage, 79/4.  
 Wardens, *s. pl.* large baking pears, 136/2.  
 Warden-tree, *s.* a pear-tree, bearing large baking pears, 137/3.  
 Wardropes, *s. pl.* wardrobes, 151/2.  
 Ware, *s.* ware, merchandise, bargain, 118/4.  
  
 Ware, *v.* to spend, 123/23. See Gloss. B. 15 (E. D. S.), p. 72; Gloss. B. 2, p. 42.  
 Warke, *s.* work, 6/9, 21/26; *warkes*, *pl. prol.* 22, 143/11.  
 Warry-bredes, *s. pl.* worms just under the skin, 63/1. "*Wary-breeds*, or *Warnel-worms*, worms on the backs of cattle within their skin;" Bailey's Dict. vol. i. ed. 1735. Cf. "*Warbot*, a worrne, *escarbot*;" Palsgrave.  
 Wartes, *s. pl.* warts, 118/2.  
 Washen, *pp.* washed, 122/15; *wasshen*, 51/2.  
 Waspes, *s. pl.* wasps, 122/47.  
 Water-bowes, *s. pl.* smaller boughs or shoots of a tree (probably from their containing much sap), 129/17.  
 Water-forowed, *pp.* drained by making furrows, 13/6, 33/5.  
 Wauerynge, *pres. part.* wavering, 165/42.  
 Waxen, *pp.* grown, 156/36.  
 Wayne, *s.* a wain, waggon, 5/6.  
 Wayne, *v.* wean, 39/5.  
 Wayne-rope, *s.* a cart-rope, 5/6.  
 Wayters, *s. pl.* waiters, 152/11.  
 Weare, *v.* exhaust, 14/16.  
 Weate, *s.* wet, moisture, 124/22.  
 Wedders, *s. pl.* wether-sheep, 53/5.  
 Wede, *v.* weed, 21/2.  
 Wedes, *s. pl.* weeds, 146/37.  
 Wedyng-hoke, *s.* weeding-hook, 21/7.  
 Weiike, *adj.* weak, 53/9. Icel. *veikr*.  
 Were, *pt. s. subj.* would be, 121/2.  
 Weter, *adj. compar.* wetter, 14/3.  
 Wether, weather, 18/29.  
 Wethy, *s.* a willow, 126/3, 130/5, 138/31.  
 Wethy-wode, *s.* withy-wood, willow-wood, 24/8. [Not osier.]  
 Weyke, *adv.* weak, 66/10. See Weiike.  
 What-someuer, whatsoever, 168/10.  
 Whelpe, *s.* a young dog, 41/17.  
 Whereas, *adv.* where that, where, 6/15.  
 Whether, *adj.* which of the two, 40/20, 144/19.  
 Whyted, *pp.* (= thwited), cut, whittled down into shape, 5/25. Cf. *whittle* = *thwittle*, a knife; from *thwite*, to cut.  
 Whyte-thorne, *s.* whitethorn, 124/4, 126/4, 137/12.  
 Whyte wheate, *s.* a kind of wheat, 34/23.  
 Wiedes, *s. pl.* weeds, 16/25.  
 Winowed, *pp.* winnowed, 146/56.

- Winter-corne, *s.* winter-corn (such as wheat or rye), 8/13.  
 Withall, with it, 146/15.  
 Withe, *s.* withy, 15/13; withee, a twig of willow, 24/15. *See* Togwith and Wethy.  
 Withed, *pp.* bound, wound, 15/41.  
 Wodde, wood, 3/39; woddess, *pl.* trees, 131/1.  
 Wode cuyll, *s.* wood-evil; a disease in sheep, 50/2.  
 Wolde, *pt. s. and pl.* ought to (lit. would), 3/31; should, ought, 15/35; must, 15/45; should, 21/20, 122/36, 140/6.  
 Woll, *s.* wool, 42/3, 146/77.  
 Woll-wynder, *s.* wool-winder, 52/7.  
 Wonders, *adv.* wondrously, prol. 24. (This afterwards became an *adj.*, and was turned into the Mod. E. *wondrous*.) *See* below.  
 Wonders, *adj.* wonderful, 11/11.  
 Wormes, *s. pl.* worms, 103/1.  
 Wouen, *pp.* woven, 146/43.  
 Wounden, *pp.* wound, 146/43.  
 Wowed, *pp.* wooed, 146/109.  
 Wrapped, *pp.* (probably) warped, drawn out into a warp, 146/43. Spelt *warped* in ed. 1598.  
 Wrethyng-temes, *s. pl.* part of the harness for oxen, 5/4. To *wrethe* is to twist; a *team* is 'an ox-chain, passing from yoke to yoke;' E. D. S. Gloss. B. 2, p. 40.  
 Wrynacles, *s. pl.* wrinkles, 100/7.  
 Wrynge, *v.* to wring, 146/85.  
 Wrynkeled, *pp.* wrinkled, 34/43.  
 Wrythen, *pp.* wreathed, twisted, 31/15, 64/6.  
 Wyddre, *v.* wither, 21/17, 31/17; wyddred, *pp.* 25/6.  
 Wyddrynge, *s.* withering, 23/8.  
 Wydes, *s. pl.* the name of a kind of apple, 130/4.  
 Wyght, *adj.* active, swift, 76/4.  
 Wymble, *s.* an auger, 24/8.  
 Wyndgalles, *s. pl.* wind-galls, swellings or blisters above a horse's fetlock, 99/1. "*Windgalls* are little blebs or soft swellings on each side of the fetlock;" G. Markham, Husbandry, b. i. c. 57.  
 Wyndrowes, *s. pl.* rows of grass in hay-making, 25/11.  
 Yeane, *v.* produce (as a ewe), 37/26.  
 Yelde, *v.* yield, 10/9.  
 Yere, *s. pl.* years, 67/9.  
 Ylle, *adj.* ill, bad, 54/11.  
 Yokes, *s. pl.* frames of wood to couple oxen for drawing, 5/3.  
 Yomen, *s. pl.* keepers, 151/1; yomenne, yeomen, 152/11; yomenne or yomen, pawns (in chess), prol. 20, prol. 30.  
 Yorke, York, 17/22.  
 Yorkeshyre, Yorkshire, 2/26.  
 Yren, *s.* iron, 2/2, 3/49; yrens, *pl.* 3/54.  
 Yren-gray, *adj.* iron-gray, 68/75.  
 Ysaye, Isaiah, 164/3.  
 Yues, *s. pl.* ivies, 132/4.  
 Zelcester = *jelcester*, i.e. Ilchester, 2/9, 27/17.







QK  
96  
T87  
1881

Turner, William  
The names of herbes

Biological  
& Medical

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

